

[54] **PEPTIDE PROCESS FOR PREPARATION THEREOF AND USE THEREOF**

[75] Inventors: Yoshio Kuroda, Takatsuki; Eiko Iguchi, Osaka; Masanobu Kohsaka, Sakai; Hatsuo Aoki, Ikeda; Hiroshi Imanaka, Osaka; Yoshihiko Kitaura, Suita; Osamu Nakaguchi, Toyonaka; Keiji Hemmi, Yawata; Matsuhiko Aratani, Awaji-Shimmachi; Hidekazu Takeno, Nara; Satoshi Okada, Osaka; Hirokazu Tanaka; Masashi Hashimoto, both of Takarazuka, all of Japan

[73] Assignee: Fujisawa Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd., Osaka, Japan

[21] Appl. No.: 611,733

[22] Filed: May 18, 1984

Related U.S. Patent Documents

Reissue of:

[64] Patent No.: 4,311,640
Issued: Jan. 19, 1982
Appl. No.: 93,523
Filed: Nov. 13, 1979

[30] **Foreign Application Priority Data**

Nov. 14, 1978 [GB]	United Kingdom	44346/78
Jul. 31, 1979 [GB]	United Kingdom	7926705
Oct. 11, 1979 [GB]	United Kingdom	7935401
Oct. 15, 1979 [GB]	United Kingdom	7935730
Oct. 17, 1979 [GB]	United Kingdom	7936000
Oct. 29, 1979 [GB]	United Kingdom	7937343

[51] Int. Cl.⁴ C07K 5/08; C07K 5/10; C07K 5/02

[52] U.S. Cl. 530/331

[58] Field of Search 260/112.5; 424/177; 514/18, 332; 530/330, 331

[56] **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,031,069	1/1977	Nicolaides et al.	260/112.5 R
4,130,554	12/1978	Holly et al.	260/112.5 R
4,261,976	4/1981	Jolles	424/177

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

0013856 8/1980 European Pat. Off. .
2053231 2/1981 United Kingdom .

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Dezélée, P., et al., *Biochemistry*, vol. 9, No. 4, pp. 823-831, 1970.

Bulletin de la Societe de Chimie Biologique, vol. 49, pp. 1579-1591, 1967.

Nakamura, T., et al., *Agricultural and Biological Chemistry*, vol. 41, pp. 763-768, 1977.

Abstracts of the Eleventh International Congress of Chemotherapy, Oct. 1-5, 1979, Abstracts 702.

Werner et al., *Immunopotentiating Activities of a Microbial Tetrapeptide after Coupling with Lauric Acid*, (a typed draft for presentation at the Eleventh Int. Cong. of Chemotherapy, Oct. 1-5, 1979).

Elloys, F., et al., *Biochem. and Biophys. Res. Comm.*, vol. 59, pp. 1317-1325, 1974.

Kotani, S., et al., *Abstracts of Societe de Chime Biologique International Symposium*, Oct. 14-15, 1974, Paris.

Comptes Rendus Hebdomadaires des Séance de l'Académie des Sciences, Paris, 6260, pp. 1302-1304.

Migliore-Samour et al., *CR Acad. Sc. Paris, Series D*, vol. 289, pp. 473-476.

Migliore-Samour, et al., *Life Sciences*, vol. 26, No. 11, pp. 883-888.

Kontani, C. A., vol. 83, 1975, item 161981z.

Primary Examiner—Delbert R. Phillips

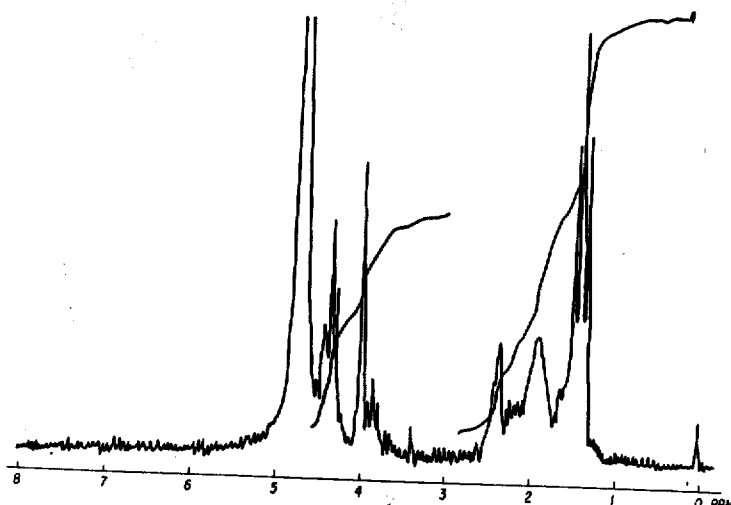
Assistant Examiner—F. T. Moezie

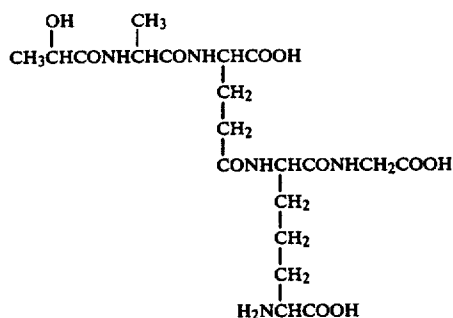
Attorney, Agent, or Firm—Oblon, Spivak, McClelland, Maier & Neustadt

[57] **ABSTRACT**

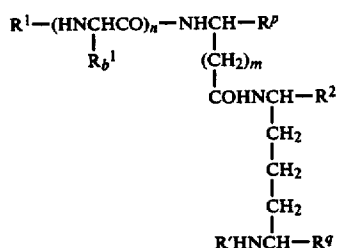
The invention deals with novel peptides useful for the therapeutic treatment of infectious diseases caused by pathogenic microorganisms. Included is the peptide FR900156 having the structure:

(Abstract continued on next page)





as well as the peptides of the structure

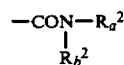


wherein

R^1 is acyl;

R_b^1 is hydrogen, methyl, isopropyl, hydroxymethyl, protected hydroxymethyl or benzyl;

R^2 is hydrogen, carboxy, protected carboxy, or a group of the formula:

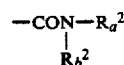


wherein R_a^2 is mono- or di-carboxy lower alkyl or ar(-carboxy) lower alkyl whose aryl moiety may be substituted by hydroxy,

R_b^2 is hydrogen or lower alkyl;

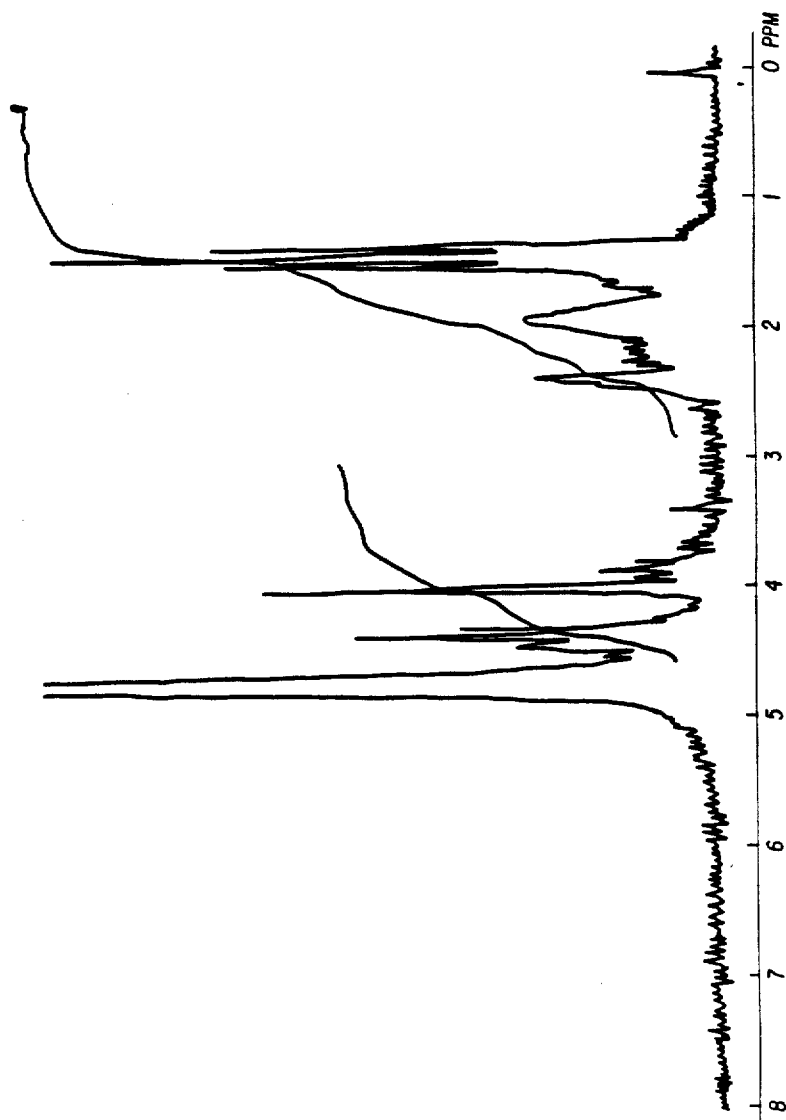
R^p and R^q are each hydrogen, carboxy, protected carboxy, with proviso that when one of R^2 and R^q is hydrogen, then the other is carboxy or protected carboxy;

R^r is hydrogen or amino protective group; m is an integer 1 to 3, and n is 1 provided that when R^1 is benzyloxycarbonyl R_b^1 is methyl, m is an integer 2 and n is an integer 1, then R^2 is not protected carboxy, and provided that when R^1 is [hydrogen,] t-butoxycarbonyl or N-acetylmuramyl, R_b^1 is methyl, m is an integer 2 and n is an integer 1, then R^2 is hydrogen, protected carboxy or a group of the formula:



wherein R_a^2 is mono- or di-carboxy lower alkyl having 1 and 3 to 6, carbon atoms, [α -carboxyethyl,] $-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{COOH}$, ar(carboxy) lower alkyl whose aryl moiety may be substituted by hydroxy and R_b^2 is as defined above, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt.

12 Claims, 1 Drawing Sheet



PEPTIDE PROCESS FOR PREPARATION THEREOF AND USE THEREOF

Matter enclosed in heavy brackets [] appears in the original patent but forms no part of this reissue specification; matter printed in italics indicates the additions made by reissue.

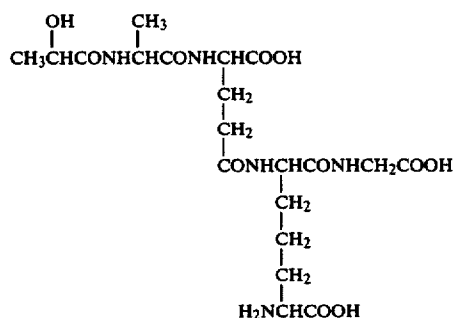
This invention relates to a new peptide. More particularly, this invention relates to a new peptide and the pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, which have pharmacological activities, to processes for the preparation thereof and to a new intermediate for preparing the active peptide, and to the pharmaceutical composition comprising the same and a method of use thereof.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWING FIGURE

The drawing figure is the nuclear magnetic resonance absorption spectrum for the Compound FR-900156.

Firstly, it is to be noted that this invention is originated from and based on the first and new discovery of the new active peptide, *e.i.* FR-900156 substance. That is, the FR-900156 substance was firstly and newly isolated in pure form from a culture broth obtained by fermentation of a new strain belonging to the genus *Streptomyces* and characterized by the physico-chemical properties.

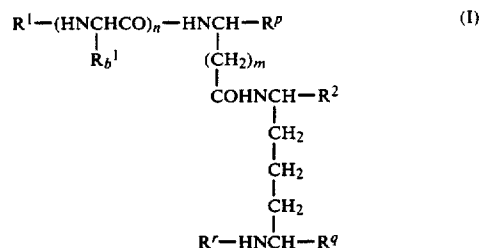
Thereafter, as a result of extensive study, the inventors of this invention succeeded in determining the chemical structure thereof by commanding physical and chemical techniques so that they could give the sequential structure of the formula (If) indicated below to FR-900156 substance and proposed with a firm belief the possible stereoisomeric structure of the formula (Ie) indicated below for the same.



Formula (If)

Further, after the structural elucidation of FR-900156 as explained above, the inventors of this invention have continued extensive studies on total syntheses of the compound of the formula (If) including the compound of the formula (Ie) so that they have succeeded in completing the industrially advantageous and applicable synthetic processes for preparation of the same, and further have synthesized a lot of related compounds.

A new peptide of this invention is represented by the following formula (I):

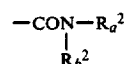


wherein

R^1 is hydrogen or acyl;

R_b^1 is hydrogen, methyl, isopropyl, hydroxymethyl, protected hydroxymethyl or benzyl;

R^2 is hydrogen, carboxy, protected carboxy, or a group of the formula:



wherein

R_a^2 is mono- or di-carboxy lower alkyl or ar(carboxy)lower alkyl whose aryl moiety may be substituted by hydroxy, R_b^2 is hydrogen or lower alkyl;

R^p and R^q are each hydrogen, carboxy, protected carboxy with proviso that when one of R^2 and R^q is hydrogen, then the other is carboxy or protected carboxy; and

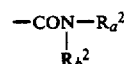
R' is hydrogen or amino protective group,

m is an integer 1 to 3; and

n is an integer 0 to 2, provided that when R^1 is benzyloxycarbonyl, R_b^2 is methyl, m is an integer 2 and n is an integer 1, then R^2 is not protected carboxy, and provided that when R^1 is hydrogen, t-butoxycarbonyl or N-acetylmuramyl,

R_b^1 is methyl, m is an integer 2 and n is an integer 1, then

R^2 is hydrogen, protected carboxy or a group of the formula:



wherein R_a^2 is mono- or di-carboxy lower alkyl having 1 and 3 to 6 carbon atoms,

α -carboxyethyl,

ar(carboxy)lower alkyl whose aryl moiety may be substituted by hydroxy and R_b^2 is as defined above.

Particulars of the various definitions, which are mentioned hereinabove, and hereinafter and preferred examples thereof are explained in the following.

The term "lower" is intended to mean a group having 1 to 6 carbon atom(s), unless otherwise provided.

(1) Re. Acyl for R^1 and R_c^1

Generally, "acyl" may be an acyl group derived from an acid such as organic carbocyclic acid, carbonic acid, or carbamic acid, or the thio acid or imidic acid corresponding to each of the preceding acids, or an organic sulfonic acid, each of which includes an aliphatic, an aromatic and/or a heterocyclic groups in its molecule; carbamoyl; or carbamimidoyl.

Suitable examples of said acyl are illustrated below.

Aliphatic acyl means an acyl group derived from an aliphatic acid and includes:

alkanoyl (e.g. formyl, acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, isobutyryl, valeryl, isovaleryl, pivaloyl, hexanoyl, α -ethylhexanoyl, heptanoyl, lauroyl, stearoyl, docosanoyl, 2-heneicosylpentacosanoyl, etc.);

cycloalkanecarbonyl (e.g. cyclopentanecarbonyl, cyclopropanecarbonyl, cyclohexanecarbonyl, cycloheptanecarbonyl, etc.);

bridgedalicycliccarbonyl such as bicyclic or tricyclic alkane or alkenecarbonyl (e.g. norbornane carbonyl, adamantanecarbonyl, etc.);

alkenoyl (e.g. acryloyl, methacryloyl, crotonoyl, oleoyl, arachidonyl, etc.);

lower alkylthio(lower)alkanoyl (e.g. methylthioacetyl, ethylthioacetyl, etc.);

lower alkoxy carbonyl (e.g. methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl, butoxycarbonyl, t-butoxycarbonyl, t-pentoxycarbonyl, etc.);

lower alkanesulfonyl(lower)alkoxy carbonyl (e.g. 2-(mesyl)ethoxycarbonyl, etc.);

lower alkylthio(lower)alkoxy carbonyl (e.g. 2-(ethylthio)ethoxycarbonyl, etc.);

lower alkenyloxy carbonyl (e.g. allyloxy carbonyl, etc.);

alkatetraenoyl (e.g. 3,7-dimethylnona-2,4,6,8-tetraenoyl, etc.);

lower alkyloxy carbonyl (e.g. 1,1-dimethylpropargyloxy carbonyl, etc.);

lower alkylcarbamoyl (e.g. methylcarbamoyl, etc.); (N-lower alkyl)thiocarbamoyl [e.g. (N-methyl)thiocarbamoyl, etc.];

lower alkylcarbamimidoyl (e.g. methylcarbamimidoyl, etc.);

oxalo;

alkoxalyl (e.g. methoxalyl, ethoxalyl, propoxalyl, etc.).

In the above exemplified aliphatic acyl, the aliphatic hydrocarbon moiety, particularly the alkyl group and alkane moiety and the alkenyl group and alkene moiety may have optionally one or more suitable substituent(s) such as amino, halogen (e.g. fluorine, chlorine, bromine, etc.), hydroxy, hydroxyimino, carboxy, lower alkoxy (e.g. methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, etc.), lower alkoxy carbonyl, acylamino such as lower alkanoylamino (e.g. acetylamino, propionylamino, etc.), ar(lower)alkoxy carbonylamino (e.g. benzyloxy carbonylamino, etc.), etc. or acyloxy such as lower alkanoyloxy (e.g. acetoxyl, propoxyl, etc.), ar(lower)alkanoyloxy (e.g. benzylcarboxyloxy, etc.), aryloxy (e.g. benzyloxy, etc.) or 5- or 6-membered cycloalkenyl (e.g. 1,3,3-trimethyl-1-cyclohexen-2-yl, etc.).

Preferred examples of aliphatic acyl having such substituents may be exemplified by

hydroxyalkanoyl (e.g. glycoloyl, lactoyl, 2-hydroxybutyl, mycoloyl, etc.),

lower alkoxy(lower)alkanoyl (e.g. methoxyacetyl, 2-methoxypropionyl, etc.),

carboxy(lower)alkanoyl (e.g. carboxyacetyl, carboxypropionyl, etc.),

(lower)alkoxy carbonyl(lower)alkanoyl (e.g. methoxalyl, ethoxalyl, methoxycarbonylacetyl, propoxycarbonylpropionyl, ethoxycarbonylbutyryl, etc.),

halo(lower)alkoxy carbonyl (e.g. chloromethoxycarbonyl, tribromoethoxycarbonyl, trichloroethoxycarbonyl, etc.),

6-membered cycloalkenyl-alkatetraenoyl (e.g. retinoyl, etc.), and the like.

Aromatic acyl means an acyl group derived from an acid having substituted or unsubstituted aryl group, in

which the aryl group may include phenyl, tolyl, xylyl, naphthyl and the like, and suitable examples thereof are illustrated as follows:

aroyl (e.g. benzoyl, toluoyl, xyloyl, naphthoyl, phthaloyl, etc.);

ar(lower)alkanoyl (e.g. phenylacetyl, diphenylacetyl, etc.);

ar(lower)alkenoyl (e.g. cinnamoyl, etc.);

aryloxy(lower)alkanoyl (e.g. phenoxyacetyl, etc.);

arylthio(lower)alkanoyl (e.g. phenylthioacetyl, etc.);

arylamino(lower)alkanoyl (e.g. N-phenylglycyl, etc.);

arenesulfonyl (e.g. benzenesulfonyl, tosyl, naphthalenesulfonyl, etc.);

aryloxy carbonyl (e.g. phenoxy carbonyl, tolyloxy carbonyl, etc.);

aralkoxy carbonyl (e.g. benzyloxy carbonyl, benzhydryloxy carbonyl, trityloxy carbonyl, α -naphthylmethoxy carbonyl, etc.);

arylcarbamoyl (e.g. phenylcarbamoyl, tolylcarbamoyl, naphthylcarbamoyl, etc.);

arylglyoxyloyl (e.g. phenylglyoxyloyl, etc.);

arylthiocarbamoyl (e.g. phenylthiocarbamoyl, etc.);

arylcarbamimidoyl (e.g. phenylcarbamimidoyl, etc.); and the like.

In the above exemplified aromatic acyl, the aromatic hydrocarbon moiety (particularly, aryl moiety) and/or aliphatic hydrocarbon moiety (particularly, alkane moiety) may have optionally one or more suitable substituent(s), such as the same as those exemplified as the suitable substituent for alkyl group and alkane moiety as mentioned above.

Preferred example of aromatic acyl having such substituents may be exemplified by

hydroxyaroyl (e.g. salicyloyl, etc.)

haloaroyl (e.g. chlorobenzoyl, etc.),

haloar(lower)alkanoyl (e.g. chlorophenylacetyl, etc.),

hydroxyar(lower)alkanoyl (e.g. mandeyl, etc.).

Heterocyclic acyl means an acyl group derived from an acid having heterocyclic group and includes:

heterocyclic carbonyl, in which the heterocycle moiety is 5 to 6 membered heterocycle containing at least one hetero atom selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur (e.g. thenoyl, furoyl, pyrrolecarbonyl, 5-oxo-2-pyrrolidinedicarbonyl, nicotinoyl, etc.);

heterocyclo(lower)alkanoyl, in which the heterocycle moiety is 5 to 6 membered heterocycle containing at least one hetero atom selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur (e.g. thienylacetyl, furylacetyl, imidazolylpropionyl, tetrazolylacetyl, 2-(2-amino-4-thiazolyl)-2-methoxyiminoacetyl, N-acetylmuramyl, etc.); and the like.

In the above exemplified heterocyclic acyl, heterocycle moiety and/or the aliphatic hydrocarbon moiety may have optionally one or more suitable substituent(s) such as the same as those exemplified as the suitable substituent for aliphatic acyl as mentioned above.

Further, in the above exemplified acyl, in case that these acyls have one or more functional group such as hydroxy, amino, carboxy and the like, such groups may be protected by conventional protective groups(s).

(2) Re. Protected carboxy for R^2 , R^p , R_1^p and R^q :

A protective group of the protected carboxy includes a conventional protective group for tentatively protecting a carboxy group which is conventionally used in the field of amino acid and peptide chemistry.

5

As preferred examples of protected carboxy, there may be exemplified an ester such as an ester with silyl compound (hereinafter referred to as silyl ester), an ester with an aliphatic hydroxy compound (hereinafter referred to as aliphatic ester) and an ester with a hydroxy compound containing an aromatic group (hereinafter referred to as aromatic ester), and a protected carbazoyl of the formula: $-\text{COHNNHY}$ (wherein Y is hydrogen or an amino protective group).

Concrete examples of such a protected carboxy are exemplified as follows.

suitable silyl ester such as trialkylsilyl (e.g. trimethylsilyl, triethylsilyl, etc.) ester,

halo-alkylsilyl (e.g. chloro-dimethylsilyl, dichloromethylsilyl, etc.) ester,

trihalosilyl (e.g. trichlorosilyl, etc.) ester,

alkylalkoxysilyl (e.g. methyl-diethoxysilyl, etc.) ester,

trialkoxysilyl (e.g. tris(2-chloroethoxy)silyl, etc.) ester, and the like;

suitable aliphatic hydrocarbon ester such as alkyl (e.g. methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, tert-butyl, etc.) ester,

cycloalkyl (e.g. cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, etc.) ester and the like; and

suitable ester containing an aromatic group such as aryl (e.g. phenyl, tolyl, xylyl, etc.) ester,

aralkyl (e.g. benzyl, diphenylmethyl, phenethyl, etc.) ester,

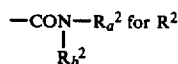
aryloxyalkyl (e.g. phenoxyethyl, phenoxyethyl, etc.) ester,

aroalkyl (e.g. phenacyl, toluoyl, etc.) ester, and the like.

The ester forming group (e.g. substituted silyl, aliphatic hydrocarbon residue, aryl, aralkyl, aryloxyalkyl, aroalkyl and the like, as exemplified above) may optionally have one or more appropriate substituent(s) such as alkyl (e.g. methyl, ethyl, etc.), cycloalkyl (e.g. cyclopropyl, cyclohexyl, etc.), alkoxy (e.g. methoxy, ethoxy, etc.), alkanoyloxy (e.g. acetoxy, etc.), alkylthio (e.g. methylthio, etc.), halogen (e.g. chlorine, etc.), cyano, nitro, etc.

Examples of such substituted esters may be mono(di or tri)haloalkyl (e.g. chloromethyl, bromoethyl, dichloromethyl, 2,2,2-trichloroethyl, 2,2,2-tribromoethyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, etc.) ester, cyanoalkyl (e.g. cyanomethyl, cyanoethyl, etc.) ester, cycloalkyl-substituted-alkyl (e.g. 1-cyclopropylethyl, etc.) ester, mono(di, tri, tetra or penta)halophenyl (e.g. 4-chlorophenyl, 3,5-dibromophenyl, 2,4,5-trichlorophenyl, 2,4,6-trichlorophenyl, pentachlorophenyl, etc.) ester, and the like.

(3) Re. A group of the formula for R^2 :



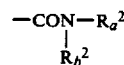
Suitable example of lower alkyl for R_b^2 and lower alkyl moiety of mono- or di-carboxy(lower)alkyl and of ar(carboxy)lower alkyl for R_a^2 is one having 1-6 carbon atoms such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, pentyl, isopentyl and the like.

Suitable example of aryl moiety of ar(carboxy)lower alkyl for R_a^2 is phenyl, tolyl, xylyl, naphthyl and the like. In this respect, it is to be noted that "ar(carboxy)lower alkyl" can alternatively be expressed by the wording "lower alkyl" which is substituted by carboxy and aryl group.

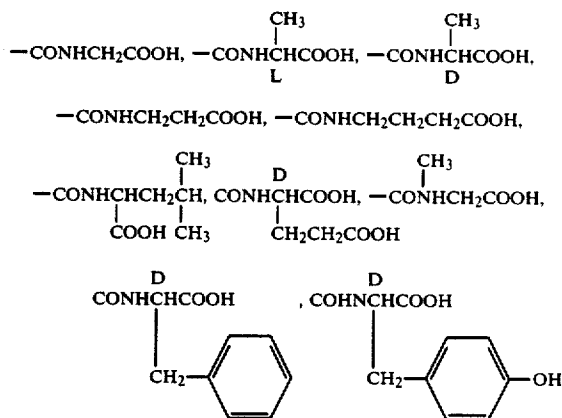
6

Carboxy in "mono- or di-carboxy lower alkyl" for R_a^2 and "ar(carboxy)lower alkyl" whose aryl moiety may be substituted by hydroxy for R_a^2 may be protected by a conventional protective group; namely R_a^2 includes within its definition also protected carboxy-lower alkyl and ar(protected carboxy)lower alkyl which may be substituted by hydroxy. Suitable example of such a protected carboxy is the same as that exemplified for R^p and R^q .

Most preferred examples of a group of the formula:



are illustrated as follows:



and the corresponding group, in which the carboxy group is protected by a conventional carboxy protective group.

(4) Re. Protected hydroxymethyl for R_b^1 :

Hydroxy group of hydroxymethyl for R_b^1 may be protected by a conventional hydroxy protective group; namely, R_b^1 includes protected hydroxymethyl.

Some preferred examples of the hydroxy protective group may be exemplified by an acyl such as substituted or unsubstituted alkanoyl (e.g. formyl, acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, isobutyryl, valeryl, bromoacetyl, dichloroacetyl, trifluoroacetyl, etc.), substituted or unsubstituted aroyl (e.g. benzoyl, toluoyl, xyloyl, nitrobenzoyl, bromobenzoyl, salicyloyl, etc.), arylalkyl (e.g. benzyl) or the like.

(5) Re. Amino protective group for R^r , R_1^r and Y:

The amino protective group includes a conventional protective group for tentatively protecting an amino group, which is used in the field of amino acid and peptide chemistry. That is, in the peptide synthesis, it is understood that, for bonding a desired "reactive" amino group ($-\text{NH}_2$) with a desired "reactive" carboxy group ($-\text{COOH}$) to form a desired peptide bond ($-\text{CONH}-$) between them, it is preferably to tentatively protect the other undesired "reactive" amino group to convert it into an unreactive or less reactive protected amino group in the reaction in order to avoid the side reaction between the undesired "reactive" amino group and desired "reactive" carboxy groups. Further, it is understood that it is preferable that a protective group in such protected amino group is easily eliminable according to the necessity in the treatment of the object peptide. Accordingly, an amino protective group to

meet the above requirements can be used and suitable one should be selected according to the kind and property of the component to be used in this invention.

As preferred examples of the amino protective group, the following examples are illustrated:

Acyl, particularly organic acyl, for example, substituted or unsubstituted aliphatic hydrocarbonoxycarbonyl such as

alkoxycarbonyl (e.g. methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl, butoxycarbonyl, t-butoxycarbonyl, t-pentoxycarbonyl, etc.),

haloalkoxycarbonyl (e.g. chloromethoxycarbonyl, tribromoethoxycarbonyl, trichloroethoxycarbonyl, etc.),

an alkane- or arene- sulfonylalkoxycarbonyl (e.g. 2-(mesyl)ethoxycarbonyl, 2-(p-toluenesulonyl)-ethoxycarbonyl, etc.),

an alkylthio- or arylthioalkoxycarbonyl (e.g. 2-(ethylthio)ethoxycarbonyl, 2-(p-tolylthio)ethoxycarbonyl, etc.),

a monocyclic or fusedcyclic-alicyclic oxycarbonyl (e.g. cyclohexyloxycarbonyl, adamantyloxycarbonyl, isobornyloxycarbonyl, etc.),

substituted or unsubstituted alkenyloxycarbonyl (e.g. allyloxycarbonyl, etc.),

substituted or unsubstituted alkynloxycarbonyl (e.g. 1,1-dimethylpropargyloxycarbonyl, etc.) or the like,

substituted or unsubstituted aryloxycarbonyl (e.g. phenoxycarbonyl, p-methylphenoxycarbonyl, etc.),

substituted or unsubstituted aralkoxycarbonyl (e.g. benzyloxycarbonyl, p-nitrobenzyloxycarbonyl, p-phenylazobenzyloxycarbonyl, p-(p-methoxyphenylazo)benzyloxycarbonyl, p-chlorobenzyloxycarbonyl, p-bromobenzyloxycarbonyl, α-naphthylmethoxycarbonyl, p-biphenylisopropoxycarbonyl, etc.);

substituted or unsubstituted arenesulfonyl (e.g. benzensulfonyl, p-toluenesulfonyl, etc.);

substituted or unsubstituted dialkylphosphoryl (e.g. dimethylphosphoryl, etc.);

substituted or unsubstituted diaralkylphosphoryl (e.g. 0,0-dibenzylphosphoryl, etc.);

substituted or unsubstituted aryloxyalkanoyl (e.g. phenoxyacetyl, p-chlorophenoxyacetyl, 2-nitrophenoxycetyl, 2-methyl-2-(2-nitrophenoxy)propionyl, etc.) or the like;

substituted or unsubstituted aryl such as phenyl, tolyl or the like;

substituted or unsubstituted aralkyl such as benzyl, diphenylmethyl, trityl, nitrobenzyl, or the like;

substituted or unsubstituted alkylidene (e.g. ethylene, isopropylidene, etc.) or the like;

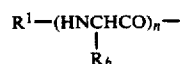
substituted or unsubstituted aralkylidene such as benzylidene, 2-hydroxybenzylidene, 2-hydroxy-5-chlorobenzylidene or the like;

substituted or unsubstituted arylthio such as phenylthio, nitrophenylthio, dinitrophenylthio, trichlorophenylthio or the like; and

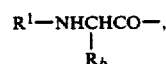
substituted or unsubstituted aralkylthio such as triethylthio or the like.

A pharmaceutically acceptable salt of the new peptides of the formula (I) may include a salt with an inorganic or organic base such as an alkali metal salt (e.g. sodium salt, potassium salt, etc.), an alkaline earth metal salt (e.g. calcium salt, etc.), ammonium salt, ethanolamine salt, triethylamine salt, dicyclohexylamine salt or the like, and an acid addition salt with organic or inorganic acid such as methane sulfonate, hydrochloride, sulfate, nitrate, phosphate or the like.

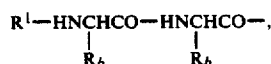
With regard to the formula (I) for the compound of this invention the following is to be noted. That is, partial formula:



in the formula (I) particularly means R^1 , when n is an integer 0,



when n is an integer 1, and



when n is an integer 2.

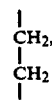
Further, partial formula



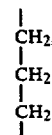
in the formula (I) particularly means



when m is an integer 1,



when m is an integer 2, and



when m is an integer 3.

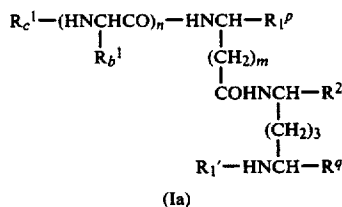
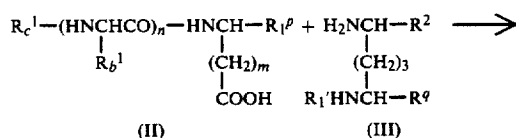
The compound (I) of this invention including FR-900156 can be prepared by chemical synthetic methods and fermentation method, details of which will be apparent from the following description.

[1] Synthesis:

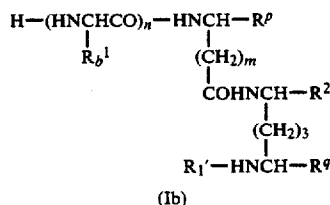
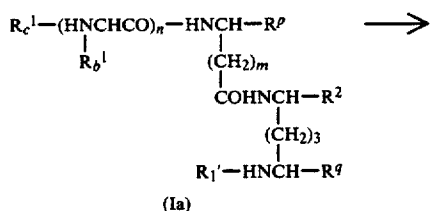
(1) Process 1: Peptide bond formation

9

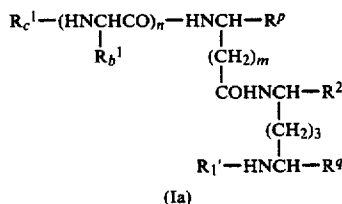
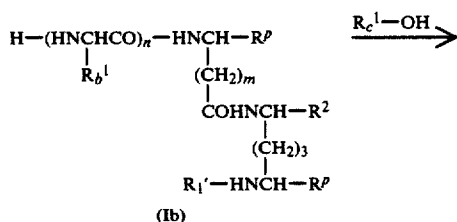
-continued



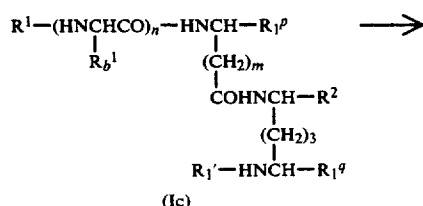
(2) Process 2: Selective deacylation



(3) Process 3: Acylation

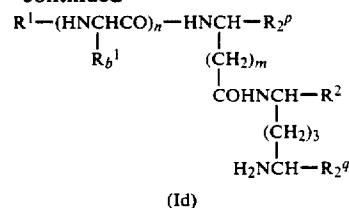


(4) Process 4: Elimination of protective groups



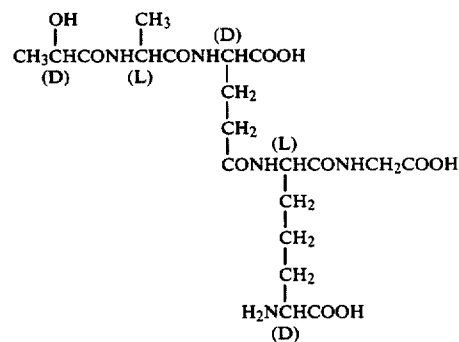
10

-continued



[2] Fermentation

A strain belonging to the genus Streptomyces



(Ie) FR-900156 substance

In the above formulae, R_c^1 is acyl,
 R_1^p is hydrogen or protected carboxy,
 R_2^p is hydrogen or carboxy,
 R_1^q is hydrogen or protected carboxy,
 R_2^q is hydrogen or carboxy,
 R_1' is amino protective group and
 m, n, R^1, R^2, R^p, R^q and R' are each as defined above.
 Detailed explanation or processes for preparation of a
 new peptide of the formula (I) will be made in the fol-
 lowing.

[1] Synthesis

(1) Process 1: Peptide bond formation

Compound (II) + Compound (III) → Compound (Ia)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (Ia) by reacting Compound (II) or its salt with a Compound (III) or its salt.

The reaction of this process can be conducted as follows. That is, in one case, as the first step, the carboxy group of Compound (II) or its salt is usually activated in a conventional manner, for example, in the form of its acid halide, azide, acid anhydride or a mixed anhydride activated ester, and the like, and is reacted with the Compound (III) to give Compound (Ia), and in the other case, the Compound (II) or its salt is reacted with the Compound (III) or its salt directly in the presence of a conventional condensing agent such as N,N-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide and the like. Among these activation methods, preferred activation method for the carboxy group of the Compound (II) into its activated form and preferred condensing agent as mentioned above are selected according to kinds of the carboxy protective group(s) of the Compound (II) and (III) and to the reaction conditions (e.g. the kinds of the reaction solvent, reaction temperature and so on).

This reaction is preferably carried out in a solvent such as methylene chloride, chloroform, tetrahydrofu-

ran, dioxane, ethyl acetate, methanol, ethanol, water or the like under ice-cooling to at ambient temperature and the reaction in the presence of a condensing agent is usually carried out in an anhydrous, but not critical, conditions.

(2) Process 2: Selective deacylation

Compound (Ia) → Compound (Ib)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (Ib) or its salt by removing selectively an acyl group for R_c^1 of Compound (Ia) or its salt.

This process is applied to case that the acyl group for R_c^1 reveals a different chemical property from that of the amino protective group for R_1^1 against each kind of the removal methods and can selectively be removable by a method to be employed.

This reaction is carried out by conventional methods, such as catalytic reduction method, liquid ammonia-alkalimetal method, acid method, zinc acid method, base method, hydrazine method and the like. Among these methods, preferred one is selected according to kind of the acyl group for R_c^1 of Compound (Ia).

Each of the above methods is explained as follows.

(i) Catalytic reduction method:

This method is preferably applied to case that the acyl group for R_c^1 of Compound (Ia) are one which is removable by catalytic reduction. As preferred examples of such an acyl group for R_c^1 , there may be exemplified substituted or unsubstituted alkoxycarbonyl (e.g. benzyloxycarbonyl, p-phenylazobenzyloxycarbonyl, p-(p-methoxyphenylazo)benzyloxycarbonyl, p-nitrobenzyloxycarbonyl, etc.); substituted or unsubstituted alkenyl- or alkynylloxycarbonyl (e.g. allyloxycarbonyl, 1,1-dimethylpropargyloxycarbonyl, etc.); substituted or unsubstituted aryloxyalkanoyl (e.g. 2-nitrophenoxyacetyl, 2-methyl-2-(2-nitrophenoxy)propionyl, etc.); and the like.

This catalytic reduction is carried out in a conventional manner, and suitable catalysts to be used in catalytic reduction are conventional ones such as platinum catalyst (e.g. platinum plate, spongy platinum, platinum black, colloidal platinum, platinum oxide or platinum wire, etc.), palladium catalyst (e.g. spongy palladium, palladium black, palladium oxide, palladium on carbon, colloidal palladium, palladium or barium sulfate, palladium on barium carbonate, etc.), nickel catalyst (e.g. reduced nickel, nickel oxide, Raney nickel, etc.) cobalt catalyst (e.g. reduced cobalt, Raney cobalt, etc.), iron catalyst (e.g. reduced iron, Raney iron, etc.), copper catalyst (e.g. reduced copper, Raney copper, Ullmann copper, etc.) or the like.

The reduction is usually carried out in a solvent. A suitable solvent to be used may be, e.g. water, methanol, ethanol, propanol, ethyl acetate, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, N,N-dimethylformamide, acetic acid, a mixture of water and alcohol (e.g. methanol, ethanol, etc.) tetrahydrofuran, dioxane or ethyl acetate, and other conventional organic solvent or a mixture thereof. Further, the reduction is preferably carried out in the presence of an acid such as acetic acid or the like.

The reaction is preferably carried out under somewhat milder conditions such as cooling or warming.

In this method, in case that R^q is a group of the formula: $-\text{CONHNH}Y$ and an amino protective group for Y is the same as the acyl for R_c^1 , then such an amino protective group also is simultaneously removed to give a Compound (Ib) wherein R^q is a group of the formula: $-\text{CONHNH}_2$. Further, in case that a protected car-

boxy group for R^p is, for example, substituted or unsubstituted aralkyl ester type one (e.g. benzyl ester p-nitrobenzyl ester, p-chlorobenzyl ester, p-phenylazobenzyloxycarbonyl ester, etc.), such a protective group also is simultaneously removed in this process to give a Compound (Ib) wherein R^p is carboxy.

(ii) Acid method:

(ii)-1 Method of use of trifluoroacetic acid or formic acid:

This method is preferably applied to case that the acyl group for R_c^1 is one which is removable by treating with trifluoroacetic acid or formic acid. Preferred examples of such an acyl group may be exemplified by a group such as branched- or alicyclohexoxycarbonyl, (e.g. t-butoxycarbonyl, t-pentoxycarbonyl, t-amylloxycarbonyl, adamantyloxycarbonyl, isobornyloxycarbonyl, etc.); substituted or unsubstituted aralkoxycarbonyl (e.g. p-methoxybenzyloxycarbonyl, etc.).

This reaction is conventionally carried out in a solvent such as methylene chloride, chloroform, acetic acid, water and the like in the presence of trifluoroacetic acid or formic acid, and anisole is preferably added thereto.

Trifluoroacetic acid and formic acid are also used as the solvent.

This reaction is usually carried out under ice-cooling to at ambient temperature.

In this method, in case that R^q is a group of the formula: $-\text{CONHNH}Y$ and an amino protective group for Y is the same as the acyl for R_c^1 , then such an amino protective group also is simultaneously removed to give a Compound (Ib) wherein R^q is a group of the formula: $-\text{CONHNH}_2$. Further, in case that a protected carboxy group for R^p is, for example, a branched alkyl ester (e.g. t-butyl ester, etc.), or substituted or unsubstituted aralkyl ester (e.g. diphenylmethyl ester, p-methoxybenzyl ester, etc.), such a protective group also is simultaneously removed to give a Compound (Ib) wherein R^p is carboxy.

(ii)-2 Method of use of hydrochloric acid or p-toluenesulfonic acid:

This method is preferably applied to case that an acyl group for R_c^1 is one which is removed by treating with hydrochloric acid or p-toluenesulfonic acid.

Preferred examples of such an acyl group may be exemplified by e.g. substituted or unsubstituted branched alkoxycarbonyl (e.g. t-butoxycarbonyl, 1-(p-biphenyl)-1-methylethoxycarbonyl, etc.) and the like in addition to one as illustrated in the above (ii)-1.

This reaction is carried out in a solvent such as ethyl acetate, methylene chloride, chloroform, tetrahydrofuran and the like in the presence of an inorganic or organic strong acid such as hydrochloric acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid or the like, and anisole is preferably added thereto.

This reaction is preferably carried out under ice-cooling to at ambient temperature.

In this method, in case that R^q is a group of the formula: $-\text{CONHNH}Y$ and an amino protective group for Y is the same as the acyl for R_c^1 , then such an amino protective group also is simultaneously removed to give a Compound (Ib) wherein R^q is a group of the formula: $-\text{CONHNH}_2$. Further, in case that a protected carboxy group for R^p is, for example, a branched alkyl ester (e.g. t-butyl ester etc.) or substituted or unsubstituted aralkyl ester (e.g. diphenylmethyl ester, p-methoxybenzyl ester, etc.), such a protective group also is simulta-

neously removed to give a Compound (Ib) wherein R^p is carboxy.

(ii)-3 Method of use of hydrogen bromide:

This method is preferably applied to case that an acyl group for R_c^1 is one which is removable by treating with hydrogen bromide.

Preferred examples of such an acyl group may be exemplified by substituted or unsubstituted aralkoxycarbonyl (e.g. benzyloxycarbonyl, p-chlorobenzyloxycarbonyl, p-bromobenzyloxycarbonyl, p-tolyloxycarbonyl, p-phenylazobenzyloxycarbonyl, α -naphthylmethoxycarbonyl, etc.) and an alkoxycarbonyl (e.g. isopropoxycarbonyl, etc.) in addition to one as illustrated in the above (ii)-1 and (ii)-2.

This reaction is usually carried out in a solvent such as ethyl acetate, acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid or the like in the presence of hydrogen bromide.

This reaction is preferably carried out under ice-cooling to at ambient temperature.

In this method, in case that R^q is a group of the formula: $-\text{CONHNH}Y$ and an amino protective group for Y is the same as the acyl for R_c^1 , then such an amino protective group also is simultaneously removed to give Compound (Ib) wherein R^q is a group of the formula: $-\text{CONHNH}_2$. Further, in case that a protected carboxy group for R^p is, for example, a branched alkyl ester or (e.g. t-butyl ester, etc.), substituted or unsubstituted aralkyl ester (e.g. diphenylmethyl ester, p-methoxybenzyl ester, etc.), such a protective group is simultaneously removed to give a Compound (Ib) wherein R^p is carboxy.

(iii) Liquid-ammonia-alkali metal method:

This method is preferably applied to case that the acyl group for R_c^1 is one which is removable by treating with liquid ammonia-alkali metal. As preferred examples of such an acyl group, there may be exemplified substituted or unsubstituted aralkoxycarbonyl (e.g. benzyloxycarbonyl, etc.), substituted or unsubstituted aryloxycarbonyl (e.g. phenoxycarbonyl, p-methylphenoxycarbonyl, etc.), an arenesulfonyl (e.g. benzenesulfonyl, p-toluenesulfonyl, etc.) and the like.

This reaction is usually carried out by dissolving Compound (Ia) into liquid ammonia and then alkali metal is added thereto.

This reaction is preferably carried out at a lower temperature, e.g. at -78°C . to at boiling point of liquid ammonia.

In this method, in case that R^q is a group of the formula: $-\text{CONHNH}Y$ and amino protective group for Y is the same as the acyl for R_c^1 , then such an amino protective group also is simultaneously removed to give a Compound (Ib) wherein R^q is a group of the formula: $-\text{CONHNH}_2$.

(iv) Hydrazine method:

This method is preferably applied to case that the acyl group for R_c^1 is one which is removable by treating with a hydrazine compound or an amine compound. As preferred examples of such an acyl group, there may be exemplified phthaloyl, formyl, acetoacetyl, etc.

Preferred examples of hydrazine compound are exemplified by hydrazine, methylhydrazine, phenylhydrazine and the like and those of amine compound are exemplified by hydroxylamine, dialkylaminoalkylamine (e.g. N,N-dimethylaminopropylamine, etc.) and the like.

This reaction is usually carried out by treating Compound (Ia) with the hydrazine compound or amine compound in a solvent such as water, alcohol (e.g.

methanol, ethanol, etc.) tetrahydrofuran, dioxane or the like at ambient temperature to under reflux.

In this method, in case that R^q is a group of the formula: $-\text{CONHNH}Y$ and an amino protective group for Y is the same as the acyl for R_c^1 , then such an amino protective group also is simultaneously removed to give a Compound (Ib) wherein R^q is a group of the formula $-\text{CONHNH}_2$.

(v) Zinc-acid method:

This method is preferably applied to case that the acyl group for R_c^1 is one which is removable by treating with zinc acid.

As preferred examples of such an acyl group, there may be exemplified trichloroethoxycarbonyl, 4-piperidylloxycarbonyl, 1-methyl-1-(4-pyridyl)ethoxycarbonyl and the like.

This method is carried out by treating Compound (Ia) with zinc in the presence of a weak acid such as formic acid, acetic acid and the like. The reaction may be carried out in a solvent such as methylene chloride, chloroform, tetrahydrofuran, ethyl acetate, alcohol (e.g. methanol, ethanol, etc.), dimethylformamide and the like, and in this case a weak acid as mentioned above is added to such a solvent. The reaction is usually carried out at -10°C . to ambient temperature.

In this reaction, in case that R^q is a group of the formula: $-\text{CONHNH}Y$ and an amino protective group for Y is the same as the acyl for R_c^1 , then such an amino protective group also is simultaneously removed to give a Compound (Ib) wherein R^q is a group of the formula: $-\text{CONHNH}_2$. Further, in case that a protected carboxy group for R^p of Compound (Ia) is, for example, a halo-alkyl ester type of group (e.g. trichloroethyl, etc.), such a carboxy protective group also is simultaneously removed to give a Compound (Ib) wherein R^p is carboxy.

(vi) Base method:

This method is preferably applied to case that the acyl group for R_c^1 is one which is removable by treating with a base. As preferred examples of such an acyl group, there may be exemplified haloalkanoyl (e.g. trifluoroacetyl, etc.), substituted or unsubstituted alkoxycarbonyl (e.g. 2-(p-toluenesulfonyl)ethoxycarbonyl, 2-(p-tolylthio)ethoxycarbonyl, etc.), substituted or unsubstituted aryloxycarbonyl (e.g. 2-nitrophenoxycarbonyl, etc.) and the like.

This method is carried out in the presence of a base under ice-cooling to at ambient temperature.

Suitable base is an inorganic base such as alkali metal hydroxide or alkaline earth metal hydroxide, or the corresponding carbonate or bicarbonate (e.g. sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, lithium carbonate, sodium bicarbonate, calcium hydroxide, magnesium hydroxide, etc.), ammonium hydroxide or the like; an organic base such as an alkoxide or phenoxide of the above metal (e.g. sodium ethoxide, sodium methoxide, lithium phenoxide, etc.), an amine such as mono-, di- or trialkylamine (e.g. methylamine, ethylamine, propylamine, isopropylamine, butylamine, N,N-dimethyl-1, 3-propanediamine, trimethylamine, triethylamine, etc.), unsubstituted, mono- or disubstituted arylamine (e.g. aniline, N-methylaniline, N,N-dimethylaniline, etc.), a heterocyclic base (e.g. pyrrolidine, morpholine, N-methylmorpholine, N-methylpiperidine, N,N-dimethylpiperazine, pyridine, etc.) or the like; a basic ion exchange resin and the like.

This method is preferably conducted under somewhat milder conditions such as cooling or warming and usually in any solvent which does not have an adverse influence on the reaction, e.g. water, a hydrophilic solvent such as alcohol (e.g. methanol, ethanol, propanol, etc.), N,N-dimethylformamide, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, dimethylsulfoxide, etc. or a mixture thereof. In case that the above-mentioned bases are in liquid, they can also be used as a solvent.

In this method, in case that R^q is a group of the formula: $-\text{CONHNH}Y$ and an amino protective group for Y is the same as the acyl for R_c^1 , then such an amino protective group also is simultaneously removed to give a Compound (Ib) wherein R^q is a group of the formula: $-\text{CONHNH}_2$. Further, in case that a protected carboxy group for R^p of Compound (Ia) is, for example, an alkyl ester type of group (e.g. methyl ester, ethyl ester, etc.), an aralkyl ester type group (e.g. benzyl ester, etc.), such a protective group also is simultaneously removed to give a Compound (Ib) wherein R^p is carboxy.

(3) Process 3: Compound (Ib) $\xrightarrow{R_c^1-OH}$ Compound (Ia)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (Ia) by reacting Compound (Ib) with an acylating agent.

The acylating agent to be used in this reaction includes an organic acid (R_c^1-OH) wherein R_c^1 is acyl group) such as monobasic or dibasic organic carboxylic acid, an organic carbonic acid or an organic carbamic acid and the corresponding thio acid or imidic acid; and an organic sulfonic acid, and more particularly, aliphatic, aromatic or heterocyclic carboxylic acid, and the corresponding carbonic, carbamic, thiocarboxylic, thiocarbonic, thiocarbamic, carboximidic, carbamimidic acid, and sulfonic acid; their reactive derivatives; and also includes an isocyanate (e.g. potassium-, alkyl- or aryl- isocyanate), isothiocyanate (e.g. alkyl isothiocyanate) and an isothiourea (e.g. ethyl isothiourea). Suitable examples of these organic acid (R_c^1-OH wherein R_c^1 is acyl group) are the corresponding organic acid to those comprising the acyl group as exemplified hereinabove in details in the descriptions of suitable examples of acyl groups for R^1 and R_c^1 of the compound (I).

Said organic acid as an acylating agent can be used in the form of an activated organic acid, i.e., as a reactive derivative of the acid. As such reactive derivatives of said organic acids, there may be exemplified an acid halide, an acid azide, an acid anhydride, an activated amide, an activated ester, etc., and additionally isocyanate and isothiocyanate can be preferably be used as reactive derivatives of carbamic and thiocarbamic acids, respectively.

Preferred examples of such reactive derivatives are illustrated by:

an acid halide (e.g. acid chloride, acid bromide etc.);
an acid azide;

an acid anhydride including a mixed acid anhydride with an acid such as dialkylphosphoric acid, phenylphosphoric acid, diphenylphosphoric acid, dibenzylphosphoric acid, halogenated phosphoric acid, dialkylphosphorous acid, sulfurous acid, thiosulfuric acid, sulfuric acid, monoalkylcarbonic acid, aliphatic carboxylic acid (e.g. acetic acid, pivalic acid, pentanoic acid, isopentanoic acid, 2-ethylbutyric acid, trichloroacetic acid, etc.), aromatic carboxylic acid (e.g. benzoic acid, etc.) or the like, and symmetrical acid anhydride;

an activated amide with pyrazole, imidazole, 4-substituted imidazole, dimethylpyrazole, triazole or tetrazole; and

an activated ester such as substituted or unsubstituted alkylthio ester (e.g. methylthio ester, carboxymethyl thioester, etc.), substituted or unsubstituted aryl thioester, (e.g. phenyl thioester, p-nitrophenyl thioester, p-cresyl thioester, etc.), heterocyclic ester (e.g. pyranil ester, pyridyl ester, piperidyl ester, 8-quinolyl thioester, etc.) or ester with N,N-dimethylhydroxylamine, 1-hydroxy-2-(1H)-pyridone, N-hydroxysuccinimide, N-hydroxyphthalimide or 1-hydroxy-6-chlorobenzotriazole, or the like.

The above reactive derivative is selected according to the kind of the acid to be used.

In the reaction, when free acid is used as an acylating agent, the acylation reaction may preferably be conducted in the presence of a condensing agent such as carbodiimide compound (e.g. N,N'-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide, N-cyclohexyl-N'-morpholinoethylcarbodiimide, N-cyclohexyl-N'-(4-diethylaminocyclohexyl)carbodiimide, N,N'-diethylcarbodiimide, N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide, N-ethyl-N'-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide, etc.), N,N'-carbonyldi(2-methylimidazole), pentamethyleneketene-N-cyclohexylimine, diphenylketene-N-cyclohexylimine, alkoxycetylene, 1-alkoxy-1-chloroethylene, trialkyl phosphite, ethyl polyphosphate, isopropyl polyphosphate, phosphorus compound (e.g. phosphorus oxychloride, phosphorous trichloride, etc.), thionyl chloride, oxalyl chloride, 2-ethyl-7-hydroxybenzoxazolium salt, 2-ethyl-5-(m-sulfophenyl)isoxazolium hydroxide, (chloromethylene)dimethylammonium chloride, 2,2,4,4,6,6-hexachloro-1,3,5,2,4,6-triazatrichlorophosphine, 1-benzenesulphonyloxy-6-chloro-1H-benzotriazole, p-toluenesulfonyl chloride, isopropoxybenzenesulfonyl chloride or the like; or a mixed condensing agent such as a mixture of triphenylphosphine and a carbon tetrahalide (e.g. carbon tetrachloride, carbon tetrabromide, etc.), a complex of N,N-dimethylformamide with phosphoryl chloride, phosgene or thionyl chloride, etc., or the like.

The reaction is usually conducted in a solvent such as water, alcohol (e.g. methanol, ethanol, propanol, etc.), acetone, ethyl ether, dioxane, acetonitrile, ethylacetate, N,N-dimethylformamide, dimethylsulfoxide, tetrahydrofuran, dichloromethane, chloroform, etc. or pyridine, N-methylmorpholine, N-methylpyrrolidine or other conventional solvents, or a mixture thereof.

The reaction can also be conducted preferably in the presence of an organic or inorganic base such as alkali metal (e.g. sodium, potassium, etc.), alkaline earth metal (e.g. calcium, etc.), alkali or alkaline earth metal hydride (e.g. sodium hydride, calcium hydride, etc.), alkali or alkaline earth metal hydroxide (e.g. sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, calcium hydroxide, etc.), alkali or alkaline earth metal carbonate or bicarbonate (e.g. sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, sodium bicarbonate, lithium carbonate, etc.), alkali or alkaline earth metal alkoxide (e.g. sodium ethoxide, lithium methoxide, magnesium methoxide, etc.), trialkylamine (e.g. triethylamine, etc.), pyridine, bicyclic diaza compound (e.g. 1,5-diazabicyclo[3,4,0]nonene-5, 1,5-diazabicyclo[5,4,0]undecene-5, etc.) or the like. Among said base, a liquid one can also be used as a solvent.

There is no limitation to this reaction temperature, and this reaction may preferably be conducted within the range of cooling to ambient temperature.

(4) Process: Elimination of protective groups

Compound (Ic)→Compound (Id)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (Id) by subjecting Compound (Ic) to removal reaction of protective groups of protected carboxy groups for R_1^p and R_1^q and or amino protective group for R_1^r , details of which are explained as follows:

Process 4-1: Elimination of an amino protective group for R_1^r

The elimination of an amino protective group for R_1^r is carried out substantially in the same manner as that of Process 2, and accordingly the detailed explanation for Process 2 as made hereinabove is to be referred to.

Process 4-2: Removal of carboxy protective group of protected carboxy for R_1^p and R_1^q .

The reaction for removal of protective group of the protected carboxy group is carried out by a conventional method such as hydrolysis and reduction or the like, details of which are explained in the following.

(i) For hydrolysis which refers to the same meaning as solvolysis including, for example, acidolysis, alcoholysis, aminolysis, hydroxinolysis, etc.:

Hydrolysis is preferably carried out in the presence of an acid or base.

Suitable acid includes an inorganic acid (e.g. hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulfuric acid, etc.), an organic acid (e.g. formic acid, acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, propionic acid, benzenesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, etc.), an acidic ion-exchange resin and the like.

Suitable base includes an inorganic base such as alkali or alkaline earth metal hydroxide or the corresponding carbonate or bicarbonate (e.g. sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, lithium carbonate, sodium bicarbonate, calcium hydroxide, magnesium hydroxide, etc.), ammonium hydroxide or the like; an organic base such as an alkoxide or phenoxide of the above metal (e.g. sodium ethoxide, sodium methoxide, lithium phenoxide, etc.), an amine such as mono-, di- or trialkylamine (e.g. methylamine, ethylamine, propylamine, isopropylamine, butylamine, N,N-dimethyl-1,3-propanediamine, trimethylamine, triethylamine, etc.), unsubstituted, mono- or disubstituted arylamine (e.g. aniline, N-methylaniline, N,N-dimethylaniline, etc.), a heterocyclic base (e.g. pyrrolidine, morpholine, N-methylmorpholine, N-methylpiperidine, N,N-dimethylpiperazine, pyridine, etc.), hydrazines (e.g. hydrazine, methylhydrazine, ethylhydrazine, etc.) or the like; a basic ion-exchange resin or the like.

The hydrolysis is preferably conducted under somewhat milder conditions such as cooling or warming and usually in a solvent which does not have adverse influence to the reaction, e.g. water, a hydrophilic solvent such as alcohol (e.g. methanol, ethanol, propanol, etc.), acetone, N,N-dimethylformamide, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, dimethylsulfoxide, etc. or a mixture thereof, and other hydrophobic solvent such as benzene, diethylether, etc. may also be used as a solvent. A liquid abovementioned acid or base can also be used as solvent.

(ii) For reduction:

Reduction, including chemical reduction and catalytic reduction, is carried out in a conventional manner.

Suitable reducing agents to be used in chemical reduction are a metal (e.g. tin, zinc, iron, etc.), or a combination of such metal and/or metallic compound (e.g. chromium chloride, chromium acetate, etc.) and an

organic or inorganic acid (e.g. formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, etc.).

Suitable catalysts to be used in catalytic reduction are conventional ones such as platinum catalysts (e.g. platinum plate, spongy platinum, platinum black, colloidal platinum, platinum oxide or platinum wire, etc.), palladium catalysts (e.g. spongy palladium, palladium black, palladium oxide, palladium on carbon, colloidal palladium, palladium or barium sulfate, palladium or barium carbonate, etc.), nickel catalysts (e.g. reduced nickel, nickel oxide, Rabey nickel, etc.), cobalt catalysts (e.g. reduced cobalt, Raney cobalt, etc.), iron catalysts (e.g. reduced iron, Raney iron, etc.), copper catalysts (e.g. reduced copper, Raney copper, Ullman copper, etc.) or the like.

The reduction is usually carried out in a solvent. A suitable solvent to be used may be, e.g. water, alcohol (e.g. methanol, ethanol, propanol, etc.) and other conventional organic solvent or a mixture thereof. Additionally, the afore-mentioned liquid acids to be used in chemical reduction can also be used as solvent. Further, a suitable solvent to be used in catalytic reduction may be, e.g. the above-mentioned solvent, and other conventional solvent, such as diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, etc. or a mixture thereof.

The reaction is preferably carried out under somewhat milder conditions such as cooling or warming.

Among these methods for removal of protective groups, preferred one and appropriate combination methods are to be selected according to kinds of the protective groups of carboxy group and amino protective group to be removed off.

It is noted that this process includes the following cases of removal of protective groups and amino protective group, that is, one case that all of the carboxy protective groups for R_1^p and R_1^q and the amino protective group for R_1^r in the Compound (Ic) are simultaneously removed by a method to be employed to the reaction, and the other case that the carboxy protective groups and the amino protective group are sequentially and stepwise removed by a method which is appropriately selected according to the kinds of the protective group to be removed.

Process 4-3: Removal of hydrazino group

A protected carbazoyl of the formula: $-\text{CONHNHY}$ wherein Y is an amino protective group can be removed by subjecting the Compound (Ic) at first to the reaction of Process 4-1 for eliminating amino protective group (i.e. R_1^r) to give $-\text{CO.NHNH}_2$ group and then subjecting the reaction product to the reaction of this step to give $-\text{COOH}$ group, and particular of this reaction step is as follows.

The reaction of this step is carried out in a conventional manner by treating the Compound (Ic) with a conventional oxidizing agent which is capable of oxidizing a group of the formula: $-\text{CONHNH}_2$ to form into a group of the formula: $-\text{COOH}$ and accordingly preferred example of such an oxidizing agents may be halogen such as iodine, bromine etc., perhalogenic acid such as periodic acid or its salt (e.g. sodium salt, potassium salt, etc.), perchloric acid, etc., N-haloimide such as N-bromosuccinimide, etc., lead tetraacetate, hydrogen peroxide or its salt (e.g. nickel peroxide, etc.), metal oxide such as mercuric oxide, manganese dioxide, nickel peroxide, etc., cupric compound (e.g. cupric acetate, cupric sulfate, etc.) and the like.

This reaction is usually carried out in a solvent such as water, acetic acid, methanol, ethanol, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane and the like and a mixture thereof, which should be appropriately selected in accordance with the kind of oxidizing agent to be used.

This reaction is usually carried out under ice-cooling at ambient temperature, or under reflux.

As to Process 4 for Elimination of protective groups (i.e. Process 4-1, Process 4-2 and Process 4-3), it is to be noted that, in case that acyl for R¹ has one or more protective groups for hydroxy, amino and (or) carboxy, such protective groups also may be simultaneously removed and such a case is included within the scope of this process.

(2) Fermentation: A strain of *Streptomyces*→Compound (Ie)

The compound (Ie) (hereinafter referred to as FR-900156 substance) can be produced by fermentation of a FR-900156 substance producing strain belonging to the genus *Streptomyces* in a nutrient medium, details of which are explained in the following.

The microorganism which can be used for the production of the FR-900156 substance is a strain belonging to the genus *Streptomyces*, among which a strain of *Streptomyces olivaceogriseus* and *Streptomyces violaceus* have been newly isolated from a soil sample as a suitable strain of a FR-900156 substance-producing strain belonging to the genus *Streptomyces*.

It is to be understood that, for the production of the FR-900156 substance, this invention is not limited to the use of the particular organism as described herein, which is given for illustrative purpose only. This invention also includes the use of any mutants which are capable of producing the FR-900156 substance, including natural mutants which are produced by natural mutation of the organisms as well as artificial mutants which can be produced from the described organism by conventional means, such as X-rays, ultra-violet radiation, nitrogen mustard oils and the like.

I. Re. *Streptomyces olivaceogriseus* nov. sp. C-353;

Streptomyces olivaceogriseus nov. sp. C-353 has been isolated from a soil sample collected at Kochi Prefecture, Japan and deposited with and added to a permanent stock culture collection of the America Type Culture Collection under the number ATCC 31427.

Streptomyces olivaceogriseus nov. sp. C-353 (ATCC 31427) has the following morphological, cultural and physiological characteristics.

(1) Morphological characteristics:

Microscopic observations were made on cultures which were grown from 10 to 14 days on sucrose-nitrate agar, glycerin-asparagine agar, yeast-malt extract agar, oatmeal agar, starch-inorganic salts agar and Bennett agar. Sphorophore morphology was observed on undisturbed plates cultures.

1. Type of branching of spore-forming hyphae: Monopodial branching.

2. Form of spore-forming hyphae: Retinaculiaperti (closed spirals, loops).

3. Numbers of spores: 5-20 spores.

4. Surface appearance and size of spores. Smooth 0.6-1.2×1.0-1.9 micron.

5. Existence of zoospores: Not observed.

6. Existence of sporangium: Not observed.

7. Formation of spores: At aerial mycelium.

8. Fragmentation of substrate mycelium: Not observed.

(2) Cultural characteristics:

The following observations were made on slant cultures which were grown on various media at 30° C. for 10-14 days.

Medium	Aerial mass color	Reverse side of colony	Soluble Pigment
Sucrose-nitrate agar	none or very thin, powdery	pale yellow, small colonies	none
Glucose-asparagine agar	light gray to greenish gray, powdery	pale yellow to pale yellowish brown small colonies	none
Glycerin-asparagine agar	thin, powdery light gray	pale yellowish brown, small colonies	none or trace
Starch-inorganic salts agar	olive gray, powdery	grayish yellow brown, small colonies	none
Tyrosine agar	light olive gray, thin powdery	yellowish brown, small colonies	light brown
Nutrient agar	none	pale yellow, flat	none
Yeast-malt extract agar	greenish gray, powdery	yellowish brown, wrinkled colonies	none
Oatmeal agar	light gray to greenish gray, powdery	colorless, small colonies	none
Peptone-yeast iron agar	none	colorless to pale yellow, slightly wrinkled	light brown
Glucose-peptone gelatin stab	white, thin powdery	colorless to pale yellow, wrinkled colonies	brown
Milk	white, very thin powdery	colorless, surface ring growth	none

(3) Biological and physiological properties:

1. Temperature requirements (on Bennett agar slant-s)—growth from 15° C. to 40° C. optimum 28° C.

2. Hydrolysis of starch (on starch-inorganic salts agar)—hydrolyzed weakly.

3. Liquefaction of gelatin (on glucose-peptone gelatin stab)—negative.

4. Action on milk—no coagulation, no peptonization.

5. Production of melanin (on tyrosine agar, peptone-yeast iron agar and tryptone-yeast broth)—positive.

6. Utilization of various carbon compounds (on Pridham-Gottlieb basal agar medium)

L-Arabinose	—
D-Xylose	±
D-Glucose	+
D-Fructose	+
D-Galactose	+
Sucrose	+
Glycerin	+
Inositol	+
Lactose	+
L-Rhamnose	—
Maltose	+
Raffinose	—
D-Mannitol	+
D-Mannose	+
Salicin	—

Symbols:

+, good utilization; ±, doubtful utilization; —, no utilization

7. Cell wall pattern I (LL-diaminopimelic acid).

As a result of looking up the strain possessing the characteristics mentioned above by referring to the literature, namely "Bergey's Manual of Determinative

Bacteriology" eighth edition (1975), and "The International Streptomyces Project Reports" written by E. B. Shirling and D. Gottlieb Cf. International Journal of Systematic Bacteriology Vol. 18, pages 69 and 279 (1968), Vol. 19, pages 391 (1969) and Vol. 22, pages 265 (1972), *Streptomyces eurythermus* and *Streptomyces galbus* (Okami) have been detected as species having relatively analogous characteristics to those of the strain ATCC 31427.

The strain ATCC 31427, however, is different from these analogous species in the following:

Streptomyces eurythermus (Okami):

A strain of the species can assimilate arabinose and can not assimilate inositol. Assimilation of rhamnose and raffinose by a strain of the species is indefinite. Loops are not formed. Straights or flexuous mycelium are sometimes observed.

Streptomyces galbus:

Open-spirals are generally formed. A strain of the species produces a soluble yellow - yellow green pigment, and can not assimilate sucrose.

In view of the result of the observation, the strain ATCC 31427 can be judged to be a new species belonging to the genus *Streptomyces* and this has been designated as *Streptomyces olivaceogriseus* nov. sp. C-353.

II. Re. *Streptomyces violaceus* No. 6724

Streptomyces violaceus No. 6724 was isolated from a soil sample collected at Ishigaki island, at Okinawa Prefecture, Japan, and deposited with and added to a permanent stock culture collection of the American Type Culture Collection under the number ATCC 31481.

Streptomyces violaceus No. 6724 has following morphological, cultural and physiological characteristics.

(1) Morphological characteristics

Microscopic observations were made on cultures which were grown on sucrose-nitrate agar, glycerin-asparagine agar, starch-inorganic salts agar, yeast-malt asparagine agar, starch-inorganic salts agar, yeast-malt extract agar and oatmeal agar at 30° C. for 10 to 14 days.

1. Type of branching of spore-forming hyphae: Monopodial branching.

2. Form of spore-forming hyphae: Spirales.

3. Numbers of spores: 10-50.

4. Surface appearance and size of spore: Spiny, 0.3-0.7×0.6-1.1μ.

5. Existence of zoospore and sporangium: Not observed.

6. Formation of spores: At aerial mycelium.

7. Fragmentation of substrate mycelium: Not observed.

(2) Cultural characteristics

The following observations were made on cultures which were grown on various media at 30° C. for 10 to 14 days.

Medium	Aerial mass color	Reverse side of colony	Soluble Pigment
Sucrose-nitrate agar	purplish white, powdery	small colonies	purple
Glucose-asparagine agar	purplish white, powdery	yellowish red, small colonies	pink
Glycerin-asparagine agar	pinkish white-pink, powdery	Yellowish red, small colonies, slightly wrinkled	pink-red
Starch-inorganic salts agar	whitish red, short cottony	yellowish red, slightly wrinkled	red
Tyrosine agar	none	red, wrinkled colonies	none or trace

-continued

Medium	Aerial mass color	Reverse side of colony	Soluble Pigment
5 Nutrient agar	none or very thin powdery	colorless-purple flat	reddish purple
Yeast-malt extract agar	pink-purplish pink, short cottony	reddish brown-purplish brown, wrinkled colonies	reddish purple
10 Oatmeal agar	pink-purplish pink, powdery	colorless-purplish pink, small colonies	pink-purple
Peptone-yeast iron agar	none	colorless, wrinkled colonies	brown
Glucose-peptone gelatin stab	white, thin powdery	red, wrinkled colonies	faint brown
15 Milk	thin powdery	red growth on surface	reddish yellow

Reverse mycelium pigment is pH indicator, changing from red to violet (purple) with addition of 0.05 N NaOH or from violet to red (pink) with addition of 0.05 N HCl. Soluble pigment is also pH sensitive, showing the same changes noted for reverse mycelium pigment.

(3) Biological and physiological properties

1. Temperature requirements (on Bennett agar slant-s)—growth from 15° C. to 40° C. (optimum 28° C.).

2. Liquefaction of gelatin (on glucose-peptone gelatin stab)—negative.

3. Hydrolysis of starch (on starch-inorganic salts agar)—positive.

4. Action on milk—coagulation, no peptonization.

5. Production of melanoid pigment (on tyrosine agar, peptone-yeast iron agar and tryptone-yeast extract both)—positive, very weak or not on tyrosine agar.

6. Utilization of various carbon compounds (on Pridham-Gottlieb basal agar medium)

	L-Arabinose	+
	D-Xylose	+
	L-Rhamnose	+
	D-Glucose	+
	D-Fructose	+
	D-Mannose	+
	D-Galactose	+
	Sucrose	+
	Lactose	+
	Maltose	+
	Raffinose	+
	Inulin	±
	Cellulose	—
	Chitin	—
	Glycerin	+
	D-Mannitol	+
	Salicin	+
	Inositol	+
	Na-Acetate	—
	Na-Citrate	+
	Na-Succinate	+

Symbols:

+ good utilization
± doubtful utilization
— no utilization

The FR-900156 substance of this invention is produced when the FR-900156 substance-producing strain belonging to the genus *Streptomyces* (e.g. *Streptomyces olivaceogriseus* nov. sp. C-353 and *Streptomyces violaceus*, etc.) is grown in a nutrient medium containing sources of assimilable carbon and nitrogen under aerobic conditions (e.g. shaking culture, submerged culture, etc.).

The preferred sources of carbon in the nutrient medium are carbohydrates such as glucose, fructose, glyc-

erin, starch and the like. Other sources which may be included are lactose, arabinose, xylose, dextrin, molasses and the like.

The preferred sources of nitrogen are yeast extract, peptone, gluten meal, cottonseed meal, soybean meal, corn steep liquor, dried yeast, wheat germ, etc., as well as inorganic and organic nitrogen compounds such as ammonium salts (e.g. ammonium nitrate, ammonium sulphate, ammonium phosphate, etc.), urea, amino acid and the like.

The carbon and nitrogen sources, though advantageously employed in combination, need not be used in their pure form because less pure materials, which contain traces of growth factors and considerable quantities of mineral nutrients, are also suitable for use. When desired, there may be added to the medium mineral salts such as calcium carbonate, sodium or potassium phosphate, sodium or potassium chloride, magnesium salts, copper salts and the like. If necessary, especially when the culture medium foams seriously a defoaming agent, such as liquid paraffin, fatty oil, plant oil, mineral oil or silicone may be added.

As in the case of the preferred methods used for the production of other antibiotics in massive amounts, submerged aerobic cultural conditions are preferred for the production of the FR-900156 substance in massive amounts. For the production in small amounts, a shaking or surface culture in a flask or bottle is employed. Furthermore, when the growth is carried out in large tanks, it is preferably to use the vegetative form of the organism for inoculation in the production tanks in order to avoid growth lag in the process of production of the FR-900156 substance. Accordingly, it is desirable first to produce a vegetative inoculum of the organism by inoculating a relatively small quantity of culture medium with spores or mycelia of the organism and culture them and then to transfer the cultured vegetative inoculum aseptically to large tanks. The medium, in which the vegetative inoculum is produced, is substantially the same as or different from the medium utilized for the production of the FR-900156 substance.

Agitation and aeration of the culture mixture may be accomplished in a variety of ways. Agitation may be provided by a propeller or similar mechanical agitation equipment, by revolving or shaking the fermentor, by various pumping equipment or by the passage of sterile air through the medium. Aeration may be effected by passing sterile air through the fermentation mixture.

The fermentation is usually conducted at a temperature between about 20° C. and 40° C., preferably 30° C., for a period of about 50 hours to 100 hours.

The FR-900156 substance can be recovered from the culture medium by conventional means which are commonly used for the recovery of other known antibiotics.

In general, most of the FR-900156 substance produced are found in the cultured broth, and accordingly the FR-900156 substance can be separated from the filtrate, which is obtained by filtering of centrifuging the culture broth, by a conventional method such as concentration under reduced pressure, lyophilization, pH adjustment, treatment with a resin (e.g. anion or cation exchange resin, non-ionic absorption resin, etc.), treatment with an adsorbent (e.g. activated charcoal, silicic acid, silica gel, cellulose, alumina, etc.), crystallization, recrystallization and the like.

The FR-900156 substance thus produced in the culture broth can be isolated in the free form, i.e., FR-900156 substance per se and when the solution or its

concentrate containing the FR-900156 substance is treated with a base, i.e. with an inorganic base such as an alkali metal compound (e.g. sodium hydroxide, sodium carbonate, sodium bicarbonate, potassium hydroxide, etc.), an alkaline earth metal compound (e.g. calcium hydroxide, magnesium hydroxide, etc.), ammonia and the like, with an organic base (e.g. ethanolamine, triethylamine, dicyclohexylamine, etc.); or with an acid i.e. with an inorganic acid (e.g. hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid, etc.); or with an organic acid (e.g. formic acid, acetic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, citric acid, tartaric acid etc.) during operation of the processes, e.g. extraction, isolation or purification processes, the FR-900156 substance may be transformed into and isolated in the form of the corresponding salts thereof. Alternatively, thus prepared salts of the FR-900156 substance can easily be converted to the free form, i.e. FR-900156 substance per se in a conventional manner.

Further, the FR-900156 substance obtained in the free form may be converted to the corresponding salts thereof with a base or an acid as mentioned above in a conventional manner.

Accordingly, it is to be understood that this invention includes within the scope thereof the FR-900156 substance as well as salts thereof as mentioned above.

The FR-900156 substance possesses the following physical and chemical properties (The following data are those of the product obtained by Example for fermentation (3)):

- (1) Form and color: White powder.
- (2) Nature of substance: Amphoteric.
- (3) Color reaction: Positive; each reaction with ninhydrin, potassium permanganate and sulfuric acid. Negative; Dragendorff reaction and Ehrlich reaction.
- (4) Solubility: Soluble; water. Sparingly soluble; methanol. Insoluble; ethanol, acetone, ethyl acetate, benzene, hexane, chloroform.
- (5) MP; 143-148 (dec.).
- (6) Specific rotation $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -27.1$ (c=0.4 in water).
- (7) Ultraviolet absorption spectrum: end absorption.
- (8) Infrared absorption spectrum (KBr): 1050, 1130, 1235, 1340, 1400, 1450, 1535, 1660, 1735, 2950, 2980, 3080, 3350 cm^{-1} .
- (9) Elementary analysis: Qualitative analysis revealed that the FR-900156 substance comprises the following elements: Carbon, Hydrogen, Nitrogen and Oxygen.
- (10) Thin layer chromatography:

Stationary phase	Developing Solvent	Rf Value
Eastman cellulose sheet*1	BuOH, Acetic acid Water(4:1:2)	0.35
Silicagel sheet Merck*2	60% i-propanol-water	0.65

Note

*1Trade name, made by Eastman Kodak Co.

*2Trade name, made by Merck & Co.

(11) Molecular weight: Mass spectrometry (Field desorption method): $M = 519$ (base peak: $M + 1 = 520$).

(12) Nuclear magnetic resonance absorption spectrum: As shown in the Figure of accompanying drawing. (Solvent: D_2O , Reference: TMS).

(13) Amino acid analysis:

-continued

(D-Lactyl-alanyl- γ -D-glutamyl-(L)-mesodiaminopimelyl(L)-glycine)

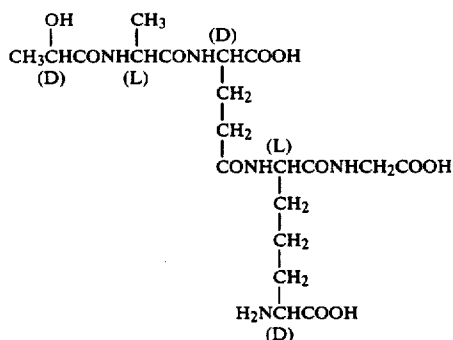
	Molar ratio
Glycine	1.00
Glutamic acid	1.06
Alanine	1.04
α , ϵ -Diaminopimelic acid	1.03

(Molar ratio is expressed as assuming Glycine = 1.00)

(14) Molecular formula: $C_{20}H_{33}N_5O_{11}$.

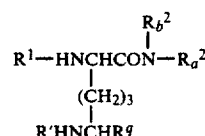
Further, physical and chemical properties of more purified sample of FR-900156 substance (i.e. a product obtained by Example for fermentation (4)) was measured, as a result of which MP of said sample is 147°-153° C. (dec.) and others properties thereof were the same as the above.

From analysis of the above physicochemical properties and the further investigation for elucidation of chemical structure, the chemical structure of the FR-900156 substance has been elucidated as follows:



Preparation of Starting Compounds (II) and (III)

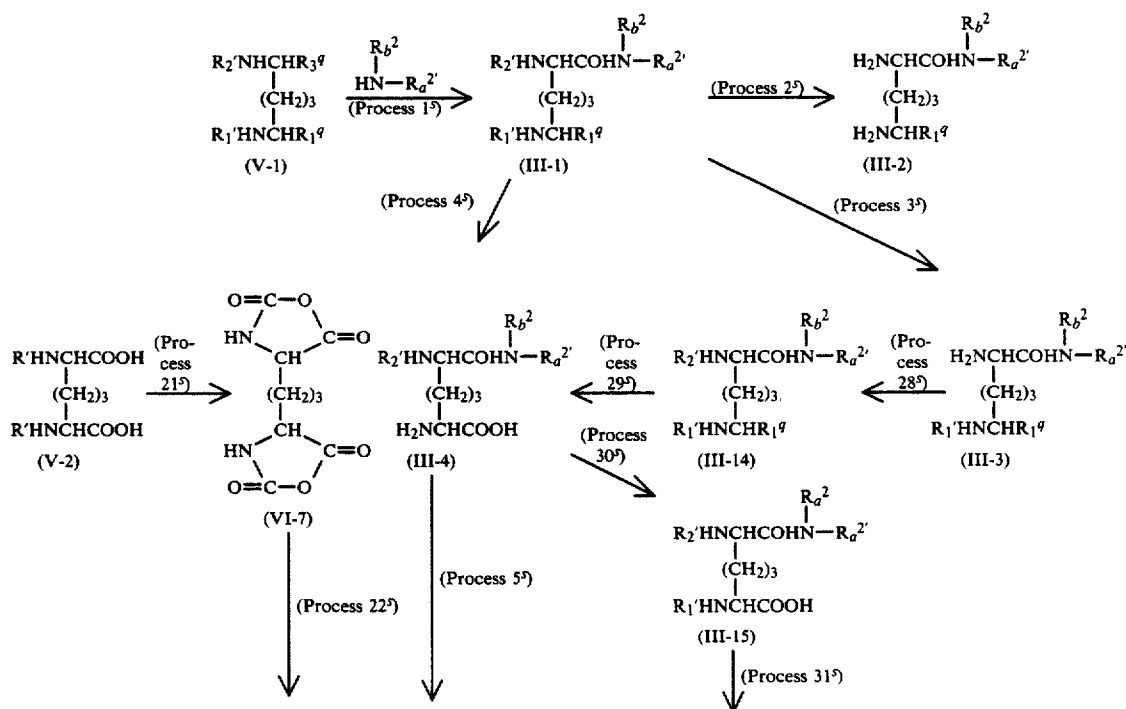
The starting Compounds (II) and (III) each include new compound and can be prepared by methods as described below. Among the Compound (III), a new compound is represented by the following formula:



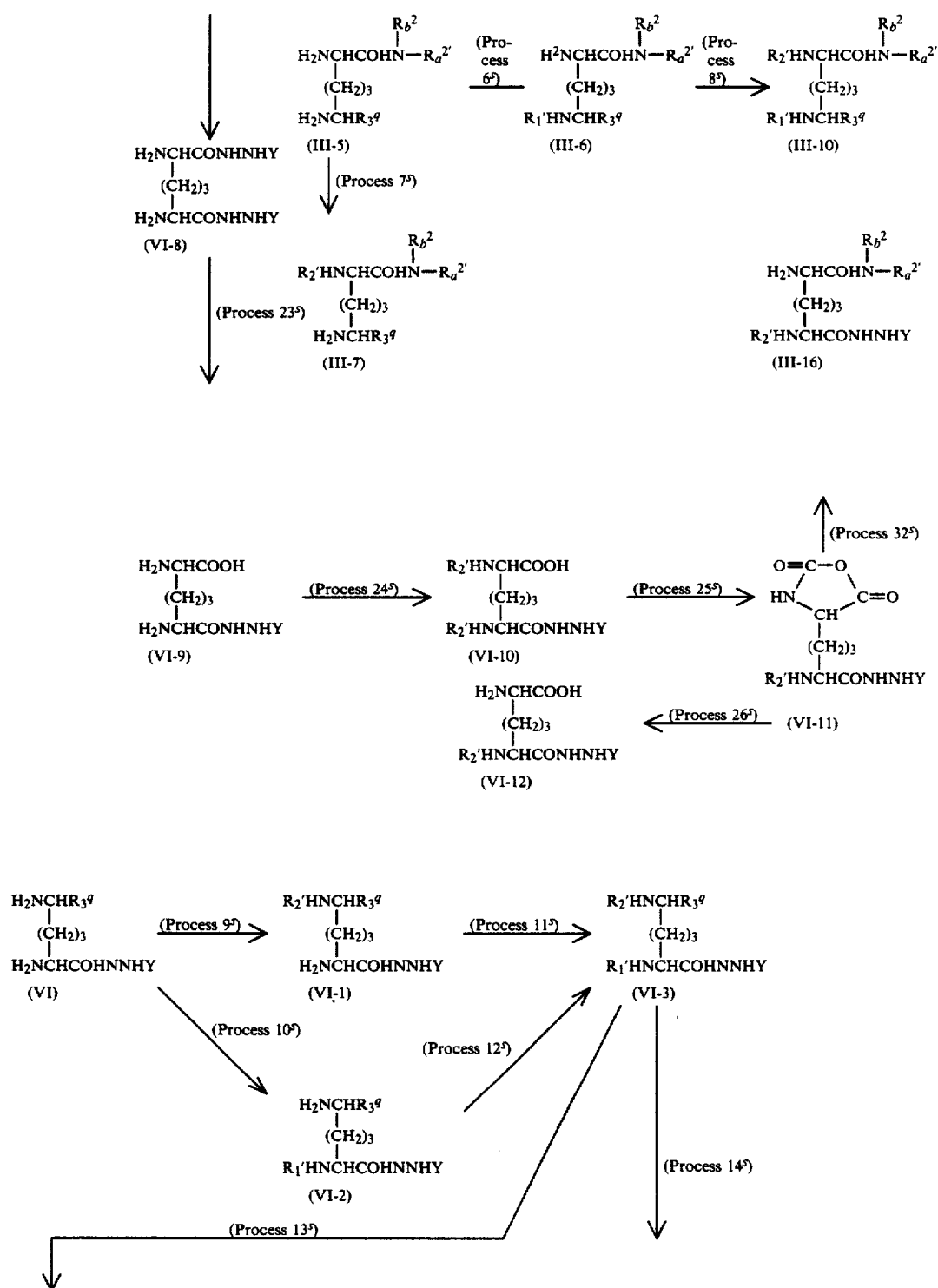
wherein R^1 , R_a^2 , R_b^2 , R^q and R^r are each as defined above, provided that when R^1 is hydrogen or t-butoxycarbonyl and R_b^2 is hydrogen, the R_a^2 is mono- or di-carboxy lower alkyl having 1 and 3 to 6 carbon atoms, α -carboxyethyl or ar(carboxy)-lower alkyl whose aryl moiety may be substituted by hydroxy.

Detailed explanation of preparation of the starting Compounds (II) and (III) are made in the following.

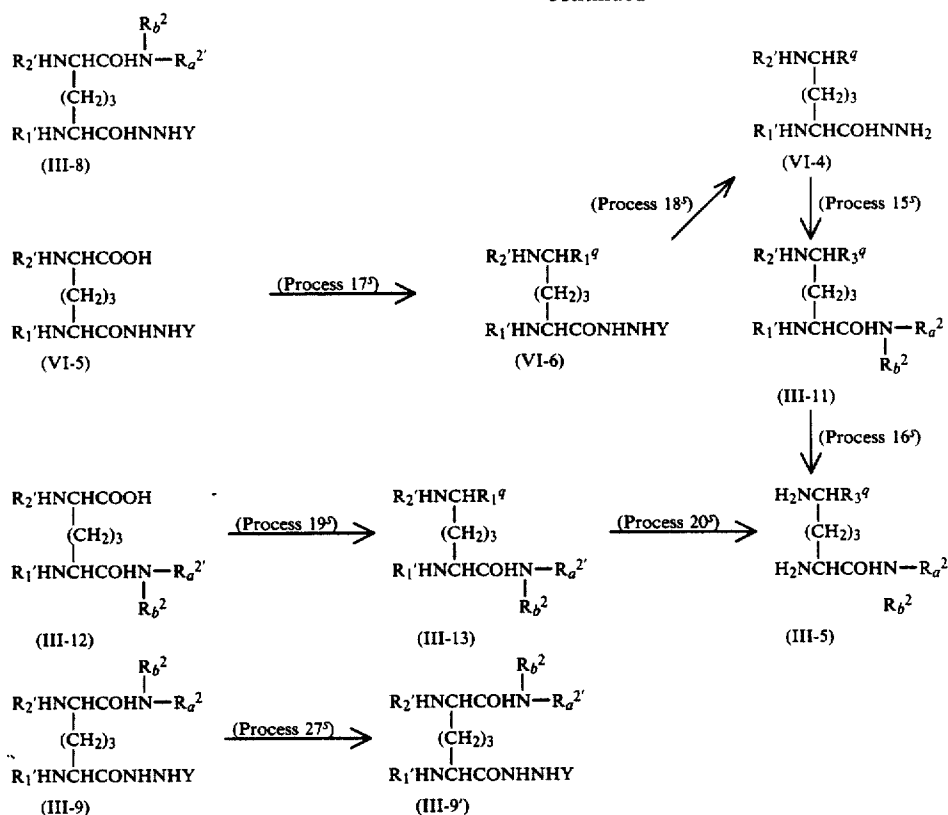
Preparation of Compound (III), i.e. Compounds (III-1) to (III-15)



-continued

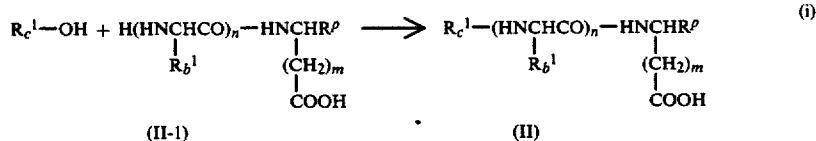


-continued

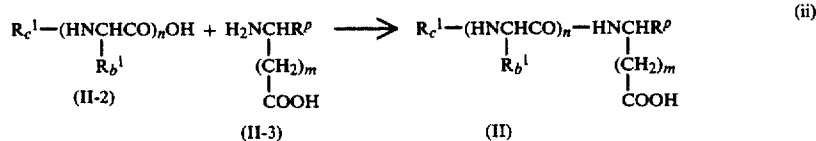


Preparation of Compound (II):

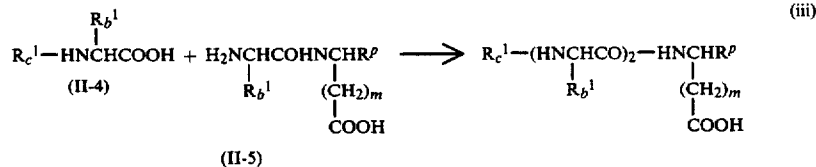
Process 33⁵:



Process 34⁵:



Process 35⁵:



In the above formula,
 R_2' is an amino protective group,
 R_a^2 is mono or di-protected carboxy-lower alkyl or ar(protected carboxy)lower alkyl whose aryl moiety may be substituted by hydroxy,
 R_3^q is carboxy or protected carboxy excepting protected carbazoyl, and
 R_c^1 , R_b^1 , R^p , R_1' , R_1^q , R_b^2 , Y , m and n are each as defined above.

Particulars of the definitions for R_2' and R_a^2 and preferred example thereof are the same as those for R_1' and R_a^2 , respectively.

(1) Process 1⁵: Compound (V-I)+Compound (IV)-Compound (III-1)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (III-1) by reacting Compound (V-1) or its salt with a Compound (IV) or its salt.

The starting Compound (V-1) includes a known one described in e.g. Biochemistry, vol. 9, pages 823-831,

1971, and new one which can be prepared according to the method as described in said literature.

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 1 as explained hereinabove.

(2) Process 2^s: Compound (III-1)→Compound (III-2)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (III-2) by subjecting Compound (III-1) to elimination reaction of both of amino protective groups for R₁' and R₂'.

This process is applied to case that both amino protective groups for R₁' and R₂' are ones which can be removed by a method to be employed in this process.

This reaction is carried out by conventional methods such as catalytic reduction method, liquid ammoniaalkalimetal method, acid method, zinc-acid method, base method, hydrazine method and the like. Among these methods, preferred one is selected according to kind of the amino protective groups for R₁' and R₂' of Compound (III-1).

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 2 as explained hereinabove.

(3) Process 3^s: Compound (III-1)→Compound (III-3)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (III-3) or its salt by removing selectively an amino protective group for R₂' of Compound (III-1) or its salt.

This process is applied in case that the amino protective group for R₂' reveals a different chemical property from that for R₁' against each kind of the removal methods as mentioned in the foregoing Process 2 and can selectively be removable by a method to be employed.

This reaction is carried out by conventional methods as mentioned in explanation for Process 2. Among these methods, preferred one is selected according to kinds of the amino protective group for R₂'. Each of such a method and the kinds of such amino protective group are to be referred to explanations in Process 2.

(4) Process 4^s: Compound (III-1)→Compound (III-4)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (III-4) or its salt by removing selectively an amino protective group for R₁' of Compound (III-1) or its salt.

This process is applied to case that the amino protective group for R₁' and the amino protective group of the protected carbazoyl for R₁'^g reveals mutually the same chemical property and they reveal a different chemical property from that for R₂' against each kind of the removal methods as mentioned in the foregoing Process 2 and they can selectively be removable by a method to be employed.

(5) Process 5^s: Compound (III-4)→Compound (III-5)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (III-5) or its salt by removing an amino protective group for R₂' or its salt.

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 3^s as explained hereinabove.

(6) Process 6^s: Compound (III-5)→Compound (III-6)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (III-6) by reacting Compound (III-5) with an amino protective agent.

The amino protecting agent includes organic carboxylic, sulfonic, sulfinic, phosphoric and carbonic acids, aldehyde and ketone compounds which are composed of the same protective group as explained for the amino protective group for R', R₁' and Y and their reactive derivatives.

The reactive derivatives include conventional ones such as halides, activated amides, activated esters, acid azide and the like.

When a free acid form of such an amino protecting agent is employed, the reaction is preferably carried out in the presence of a condensing agent conventionally used in the field of amino acid and peptide chemistry.

This reaction is carried out in water or an aqueous organic solvent in the presence of a metal compound such as cupric chloride, cupric sulfate cupric carbonate, cupric acetate or the like.

(7) Process 7^s: Compound (III-5)→Compound (III-7)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (III-7) by reacting Compound (III-5) with an amino protecting agent.

The amino protecting agent to be used in this reaction is the same as one illustrated in Process 6^s.

This reaction is carried out in a conventional solvent, preferably within the range of pH 6-9, more preferably at pH of around neutrality under ice-cooling to at ambient temperature.

(8) Process 8^s: Compound (III-6)→Compound (III-10)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (III-10) by reacting Compound (III-6) with an amino protecting agent.

The amino protecting agent is the same as that of Process 6^s and the reaction condition is the same as those of Process 3 as explained hereinabove.

(9) Process 9^s: Compound (VI)→Compound (VI-1)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (VI-1) by reacting Compound (VI) with an amino protecting agent.

In this reaction, it is necessary that such an amino protecting group to be introduced into one of two amino groups of the Compound (VI) be different from the amino protecting group for Y in case of obtaining stereospecific compound.

The amino protecting agent to be used is the same as the one illustrated in Process 6^s.

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 6^s.

(10) Process 10^s: Compound (VI)→Compound (VI-2)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (VI-2) by reacting Compound (VI) with an amino protecting agent.

In this reaction, such an amino protective group to be introduced into the amino group may be the same as or different from that for Y.

Preferred examples of an amino protecting agent are the same as that of Process 6^s.

This reaction is carried out in water or an aqueous organic solvent and preferably within the range of pH 6-9, more preferably at pH of around neutrality under ice-cooling to at ambient temperature.

(11) Process 11^s: Compound (VI-1)→Compound (VI-3)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (VI-3) by reacting Compound (VI-1) with an amino protective agent.

In this reaction, it is necessary that such an amino protective group to be introduced into the amino group is different from that for R₂' of Compound (VI-1) in case of obtaining stereospecific compound, but may be the same as that for Y.

This reaction is preferably carried out at neutral-alkaline condition, and other reaction conditions are the same as that of Process 3 as explained hereinabove.

(12) Process 12^s: Compound (VI-2)→Compound (VI-3)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (VI-3) by reacting Compound (VI-2) with an amino protecting agent.

In this reaction, it is necessary that such an amino protective group to be introduced into the amino group (VI-3) is different from that for R₁' and Y of Compound (VI-2) in case of obtaining stereospecific compound.

Reaction conditions are the same as those of Process 11^s.

(13) Process 13^s: Compound (VI-3) →Compound (III-8)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (III-8) by reacting Compound (VI-3) with a compound of the formula (IV):



or its salt.

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 1 as explained hereinabove.

(14) Process 14^s: Compound (VI-3)→Compound (VI-4)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (VI-4) by removing selectively an amino protective group for Y of Compound (VI-3).

This process is applied to case that the amino protective group for Y reveals a different chemical property from that for R₁' and R₂' against each kind of the removal methods as mentioned in the foregoing Process 2 and can selectively be removed by a method to be employed.

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 2 as explained hereinabove.

(15) Process 15^s: Compound (VI-4)→Compound (III-11)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (III-11) by reacting Compound (VI-4) or its salt with a compound of the formula:



or its salt.

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 1^s.

(16) Process 16^s: Compound (III-11)→Compound (III-5)

This process relates to a method of preparing Compound (III-5) by removing both of amino protective groups for R₁' and R₂' of Compound (III-11).

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 2^s.

(17) Process 17^s: Compound (VI-5)→Compound (VI-6)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (VI-6) by reacting Compound (VI-5) with an esterifying agent.

An esterifying agent to be used in this reaction may include a conventional one such as an alcohol (e.g. methanol, ethanol, propanol, benzylalcohol, etc.) or its reactive equivalent (e.g. halide, sulfonate, sulfate, diazo compound etc.) and the like.

This reaction is usually carried out in the presence of a base as illustrated in the aforementioned Process 2, in a conventional solvent.

(18) Process 18^s: Compound (VI-6)→Compound (VI-4)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (VI-4) by removing selectively an amino protective group for Y of Compound (VI-6).

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 14^s.

(19) Process 19^s: Compound (III-12)→Compound (III-13)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (III-13) by reacting Compound (III-12) with an esterifying agent.

An esterifying agent to be used in this process is the same as that of Process 17^s.

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 17^s.

(20) Process 20^s: Compound (III-13)→Compound (III-5)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (III-5) by removing both of amino protective groups for R₂' and R₁' of Compound (III-13).

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 16^s.

(21) Process 21^s: Compound (V-2)→Compound (VI-7)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (VI-7) by reacting Compound (V-2) with a halogenating agent.

A halogenating agent to be used in this reaction is to be such a halogenating agent as being capable of halogenating a carboxy group to provide the corresponding acid halide and may include a conventional one such as phosphorus trihalide (e.g. phosphorus trichloride, etc.), phosphorus pentahalide (e.g. phosphorus pentachloride, etc.), thionyl halide (e.g. thionyl chloride, etc.), phosgene and the like.

In this reaction, the followings are to be noted: That is, in case that a compound (V-2), wherein both of R' and R'' are a carbonic acyl group (e.g. alkoxycarbonyl, etc.), is employed as a starting compound, all of the halogenating agent as exemplified above can be used, and the reaction is conducted by reacting Compound (V-2) with the halogenating agent under warming or heating. On the other hand, in case that a compound (V-2) wherein both of R' and R'' are hydrogen, is employed as a starting compound, phosgene only is used as a halogenating agent, and the reaction is carried out by reacting Compound (V-2) with phosgene under cooling to warming.

(22) Process 22^s: Compound (VI-7)→Compound (VI-8)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (VI-8) by reacting Compound (VI-7) or its salt with a compound of the formula: H₂NNHY or its salt.

This reaction is preferably carried out in the presence of a weak acid such as acetic acid, oxalic acid or the like. This reaction is carried out in a conventional solvent under ice-cooling to at ambient temperature.

(23) Process 23^s: Compound (VI-8)→Compound (VI-9)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (VI-9) by reacting Compound (VI-8) with a conventional leucineaminopeptidase.

This reaction is preferably carried out in a conventional solvent, e.g. water, a hydrophilic solvent such as

alcohol (e.g. methanol, ethanol, etc.), acetone or the like or a mixture thereof within the range of pH 7 to 10, preferably pH 8 to 9, at 20° to 40° C., preferably 37° C.

(24) Process 24^s: Compound (VI-9)→Compound (VI-10)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (VI-10) with an amino protecting agent.

An amino protecting agent to be used are the same as that of Process 6^s.

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 3 as explained hereinabove.

(25) Process 25^s: Compound (VI-10)→Compound (VI-11)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (VI-11) by reacting Compound (VI-10) with a halogenating agent.

A halogenating agent is the same as that of Process 21^s.

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 21^s. In this respect, it is to be noted that, in case that a compound (VI-10), wherein R₂' is a carbonic acyl (e.g. alkoxycarbonyl), is employed as a starting compound, all of the halogenating agent as exemplified in the explanation for Process 21^s can be explained.

(26) Process 26^s: Compound (VI-11)→Compound (VI-12)

This process relates to a method for preparing compound (VI-12) by subjecting compound (VI-11) to hydrolysis.

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 4-2 as explained hereinabove.

(27) Process 27^s: Compound (III-9)→Compound (III-9')

This process relates to a method for preparing compound (III-9') by reacting compound (III-9) with an esterifying agent.

An esterifying agent to be used is the same as that of Process 17^s.

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 17^s.

(28) Process 28^s: Compound (III-3)→Compound (III-14)

This process relates to a method for preparing compound (III-14) by reacting compound (III-3) with an amino protecting agent.

An amino protecting agent to be used is the same as that of Process 6^s.

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 8^s.

(29) Process 29^s: Compound (III-14)→Compound (III-4)

This process relates to a method for preparing compound (III-4) by removing selectively an amino protective group for R₁'.

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 4^s.

(30) Process 30^s: Compound (III-4)→Compound (III-15)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (III-15) by reacting compound (III-4) with an amino protecting agent.

An amino protecting agent to be used is the same as that of Process 6^s.

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 8^s.

(31) Process 31^s: Compound (III-15)→Compound (III-6)

This process relates to a method for preparing compound (III-6) by removing selectively an amino protective group for R₂'.

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 3^s.

(32) Process 32^s: Compound (VI-11)→Compound (III-16)

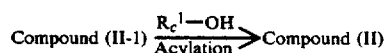
This process relates to a method for preparing compound (III-16) by reacting compound (VI-11) with a Compound of the formula:



or its salt.

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 22^s.

(33) Process 33^s:



This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (II) by reacting Compound (II-1) with an acylating agent.

The starting Compound (II-1) includes known one (e.g. Journal of Med. Chemistry, vol. 9, 971 (1966)) and new one, and said new compound can be prepared according to the method described in such literature.

The acylating agent to be used in this reaction is the same as illustrated in the aforementioned Process 3.

The acylation is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 3 as explained hereinabove.

(34) Process 34^s: Compound (II-2)+Compound (II-3)→Compound (II)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (II) or its salt by reacting Compound (II-2) or its salt with Compound (II-3) or its salt.

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 1 as explained hereinabove.

(35) Process 35^s: Compound (II-4)+Compound (II-5)→Compound (II)

This process relates to a method for preparing Compound (II) or its salt by reacting Compound (II-4) or its salt with Compound (II-5) or its salt.

This reaction is carried out in substantially the same manner as that of Process 1 as explained hereinabove.

As to the object Compound (I) and starting Compounds (II) and (III) which are prepared according to the aforementioned Processes, it is to be noted that each of said compounds includes one or more stereoisomers which is due to the asymmetric carbon atoms in their molecule and all of such isomers are included within the scope of this invention.

The new peptide (I) and its pharmaceutically acceptable salts of this invention have been found to possess enhancing activities of immune response (i.e., enhancing activities of cellular immunity and humoral antibody production) and reticuloendothelial system, mitogenic activity; inducing activity of interferon, protective efficacy in experimental infection and anticancer activity.

Accordingly, the new peptide (I) and its pharmaceutically acceptable salts are useful for the therapeutic treatment of infectious diseases caused by pathogenic microorganism, especially gram-negative bacteria and

gram-positive bacteria and funge, and of cancer in animals.

Further, Compounds (II) and (III) are useful as intermediate for preparing Compound (I) having biologically active properties as mentioned above.

For the purpose of showing pharmaceutical utility of the new peptide (I), pharmacological test data thereof are illustrated in the following.

1. BLOOD STREAM CLEARANCE OF CARBON

Reagents

1. Carbon suspension. Rotoring drawing ink (170 mg carbon/ml.) was diluted to 1/5 of the original concentration in saline containing 1% gelatin.

2. 0.1% aqueous sodium carbonate solution.

Procedure

Mice (DDY male 5-6 W) were injected via the tail vein with a dose of 0.01 ml/g body weight of carbon. Blood samples were taken by means of a pointed capillary pipette calibrated to hold a 50 μ l and previously washed in heparin. This was plunged into the retroorbital venous sinus at the nasal angle of the eye. The samples were removed at 3 and to 6 min.

The blood was immediately discharged into 3.0 ml. of the sodium carbonate solution. This hemolyzed the blood and allowed the quantitation of carbon. The samples were then read in a spectrophotometer at 660 nm, the log concentration being obtained from a previously determined standard curve. The clearance value K may be determined by plotting log carbon concentration against time according to the following relationship;

$$K = \frac{(\log C_1 - \log C_2)}{T_2 - T_1}$$

in which T_1 and T_2 represent the time in min when the sample were withdrawn and C_1 and C_2 represent the concentrations of carbon in the blood at the time T_1 and T_2 , respectively.

EXAMINATION OF EFFECT ON THE NEW PEPTIDE ON CARBON CLEARANCE

The aqueous solution of the test compound as given was administered subcutaneously to mice. Twenty four hours later, blood stream clearance of carbon was measured. K value obtained with treated mice was compared with that of control mice. The test results are shown in Table 1 to 3.

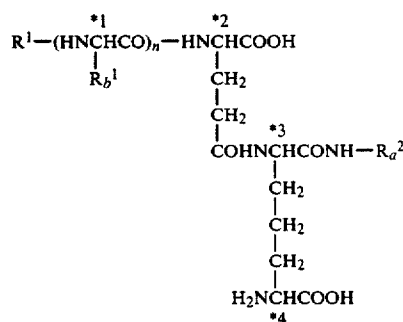


TABLE 1

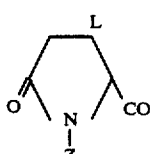
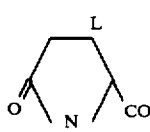
R ¹	R _b ¹	n	R _a ²	*1	*2	*3	*4	Dose (mg/ kg)	$\frac{K_{treated}}{K_{control}}$	Reference compound $\frac{K_{treated}}{K_{control}}$
OH CH ₃ CHCO D	CH ₃	1	CH ₃ -CHCOOH L	L	D	L	D	1 0.1	1.3 1.0	1.3 0.9
"	"	"	CH ₂ -C ₆ H ₅ -CHCOOH D	"	"	"	"	1 0.1	1.6 1.1	1.3 0.9
"	"	"	CH ₃ -CH-COOH D	"	"	"	"	1 0.1	2.8 2.6	2.3 1.2
H CH ₃ CO	-	0	-CH ₂ COOH	-	"	"	"	100 1 1	1.8 1.5 1.2	- 2.4 1.0
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	0.1 1 0.1	0.8 1.8 1.9	0.8 1.8 1.9
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	100 1	1.7 1.5	- 1.8

TABLE 1-continued

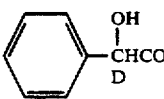
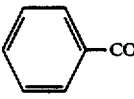
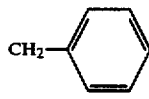
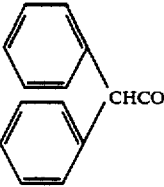
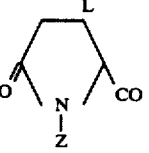
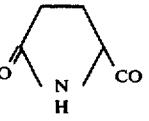
R ¹	R _b ¹	n	R _a ²	*1	*2	*3	*4	Dose (mg/ kg)	$\frac{K_{treated}}{K_{control}}$	Reference compound $\frac{K_{treated}}{K_{control}}$
H	"	"	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \\ -\text{CHCOOH} \\ \\ \text{D} \end{array}$	"	"	"	"	100 1	2.7 1.1	— 1.8
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	1 0.1	1.6 1.7	1.8 1.7
CH ₃ (CH ₂) ₅ CO	"	"	"	L	D	L	D	1 0.1	1.9 2.5	1.8 1.7
CH ₃ (CH ₂) ₁₀ CO	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	1 0.1	1.7 2.1	1.8 1.9
CH ₃ (CH ₂) ₁₆ CO	CH ₃	1	CH ₂ COOH	"	"	"	"	1 0.1	1.5 1.2	1.3 —
	"	2	"	"	"	"	"	1 0.1	1.3 1.5	1.3 0.9
CH ₃ CO	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	100 1	4.2 4.7	— 4.5
$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \\ \text{CH}_3\text{CHCO} \\ \\ \text{D} \end{array}$	H	1	"	"	"	"	"	100 1	2.0 0.9	— 2.0
"	CH ₂ OH	"	"	"	"	"	"	100 1	2.3 1.1	— 2.0
"	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \\ \text{CH} \\ \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$	"	"	"	"	"	"	100 1	2.3 1.7	— 2.0
"		"	"	"	"	"	"	100 1	2.9 1.6	— 2.3
	CH ₃	"	"	"	"	"	"	1 0.1	1.4 1.8	1.8 1.9
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	1 0.1	2.0 1.6	1.8 1.2
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	100 1	2.2 1.5	— 1.8

TABLE 1-continued

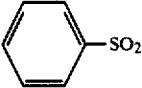
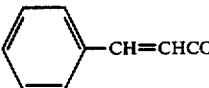
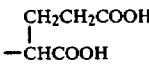
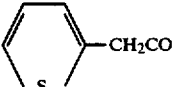
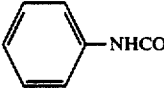
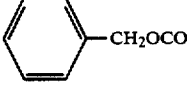
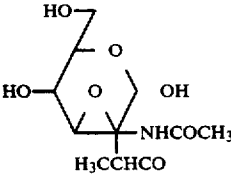
R ¹	R _b ¹	n	R _d ²	*1	*2	*3	*4	Dose (mg/ kg)	$\frac{K_{treated}}{K_{control}}$	Reference compound $\frac{K_{treated}}{K_{control}}$
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	1 0.1	1.2 1.6	1.8 1.7
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	1 0.1	2.0 1.3	1.8 1.9
	"	"		"	"	"	"	1 0.1	1.8 1.5	1.8 1.7
"	"	"		"	"	"	"	1 0.1	1.8 1.2	1.8 1.9
HOCH ₂ CO	CH ₃	1	CH ₂ COOH	"	"	"	"	100 1	2.5 0.9	— 2.1
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	1 0.1	2.3 1.5	2.4 1.4
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	100 1	2.0 1.8	— 2.0
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	100 1	1.6 1.9	— 2.2
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	100 1	2.1 1.9	— 2.2
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	100 1	1.6 2.2	— 1.7
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	100 1	1.9 0.7	— 2.0
(CH ₃) ₃ COO	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	100 1	2.9 2.3	— 1.8
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	100 1	2.1 2.0	— 2.2
CH ₃ (CH ₂) ₁₀ CO	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	1 0.1	1.7 1.6	1.3 0.9

TABLE 1-continued

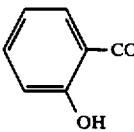
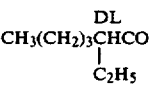
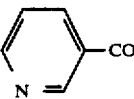
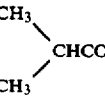
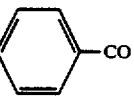
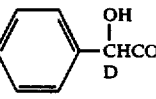
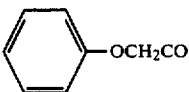
R ¹	R _b ¹	n	R _a ²	*1	*2	*3	*4	Dose (mg/ kg)	$\frac{K_{treated}}{K_{control}}$	Reference compound $\frac{K_{treated}}{K_{control}}$
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	1 0.1	1.6 1.2	1.3 0.9
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	1 0.1	3.0 1.7	3.6 1.6
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	1 0.1	2.1 1.0	1.6 1.1
H	CH ³	1	CH ₂ COOH	"	"	"	"	100 1	2.1 0.8	— 2.1
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	100 1	1.0 0.7	— 1.0
"	"	"	"	"	"	"	L	10 1	4.3 1.2	5.0 4.5
"	"	"	"	"	L	"	D	100 1	2.8 1.4	— 3.6
	"	"	"	"	D	"	"	100 1	2.6 2.4	— 2.2
	"	"	"	D	"	"	"	1 0.1	2.2 1.9	1.8 1.2
CH ₃ CH ₂ CO	"	"	"	L	"	"	"	100 1	2.0 1.6	— 2.1
CH ₃ CO	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	100 1	2.0 1.1	— 2.2
CH ₃ (CH ₂) ₅ CO	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	1 0.1	2.3 1.4	2.0 1.1
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	100 1	2.0 2.4	— 1.7
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	100 1	2.3 2.0	— 2.6
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	1 0.1	2.5 1.3	2.0 1.1
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	100 1	1.5 1.3	— 1.4

TABLE 1-continued

R ¹	R _b ¹	n	R _a ²	*1	*2	*3	*4	Dose (mg/ kg)	$\frac{K_{treated}}{K_{control}}$	Reference compound $\frac{K_{treated}}{K_{control}}$
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	100 1	1.5 1.3	— 1.4

Note:

Reference compound is a compound wherein R¹ is CH_3CHCO .
 D

R_b¹ is CH₃, n is 1, R_a² is CH₂COOH, *1 is L, *2 is D, *3 is L and *4 is D.

TABLE

Drug	Dose (mg/mouse)	$K_{treated}/K_{control}$
Krestin	10	1.1
"	1	1.0
Levamisol	10	— (death)
"	1	0.5
Tuftsin	400	1.4
"	125	1.0
FR-900156 substance	0.25	2.9
"	0.06	1.5
Control (saline)		1.0

TABLE 3-continued

Test Compound	Dose (mg/kg)	$K_{treated}/K_{control}$	Reference Compound FR-900156 substance
*1 *2 *3 *4 *5			
L L D L D	100	0.9	2.5
L L D L D	1	2.6	—
L L D L D	1	2.4	2.2
D D D L D	1	2.2	1.8
	0.1	1.9	1.2

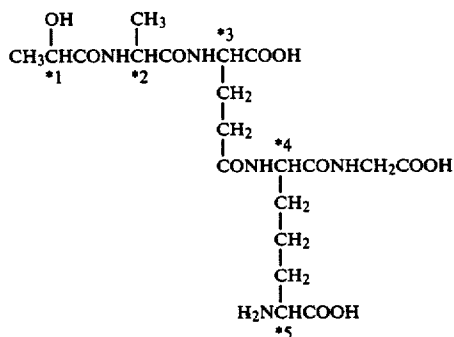


TABLE 3

Test Compound	Dose (mg/kg)	$K_{treated}/K_{control}$	Reference Compound FR-900156 substance
*1 *2 *3 *4 *5			
D L L L D	100	2.0	—
"	1	0.9	1.9
D D L L D	100	1.7	—
"	1	1.6	—
D L D L L	100	2.7	—

2. ENHANCING ACTIVITIES OF CELLULAR IMMUNITY AND HUMORAL ANTIBODY PRODUCTION

Guinea pigs (groups of five) were given 0.1 ml of FIA (Freund's Incomplete Adjuvant) emulsion containing 500 μg of ovalbumin in both posterior footpads. Control groups received antigen in FIA only, whereas the test groups received the antigen with the following test compounds in FIA. The animals were skin-tested on day 14 and bled on day 16.

(1) Test Compound (1)

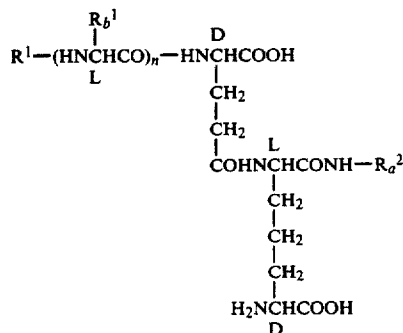


TABLE 4

R ¹	R _b ¹	n	R _a ²	Dose ($\mu\text{g}/$ site)	Cellular immunity *1 skin reaction (mm diameter, M $\pm$ S.E.)	Humoral hemag- gluti- nation titer (M $\pm$ S.E. log ₂) *2	immunity hemolysin titer (M $\pm$ S.E. log ₂) *2
H	CH ₃	1	CH ₂ COOH	1	1.8 $\pm$ 0.7 *3	11.9 $\pm$ 0.5 *3	5.6 $\pm$ 0.5
				10	8.9 $\pm$ 0.9 *3	12.3 $\pm$ 0.2 *3	6.6 $\pm$ 0.3
				100	10.8 $\pm$ 3.3 *3	12.0 $\pm$ 0.3 *3	6.7 $\pm$ 0.5
CH ₃ CH ₂ CO	"	"	"	1	2.0 $\pm$ 2.0	12.3 $\pm$ 0.2 *3	7.3 $\pm$ 0.4 *3
				10	8.6 $\pm$ 1.0 *3	11.4 $\pm$ 0.5 *3	7.8 $\pm$ 0.3 *3
				100	3.1 $\pm$ 1.3 *3	9.7 $\pm$ 0.4	7.2 $\pm$ 0.3 *3
HOCH ₂ CO	"	"	"	1	10.4 $\pm$ 2.4 *3	11.8 $\pm$ 0.5 *3	7.4 $\pm$ 0.6 *3

TABLE 4-continued

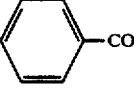
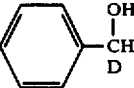
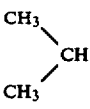
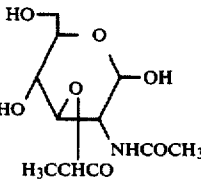
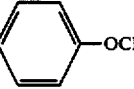
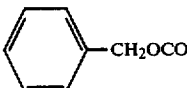
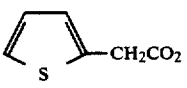
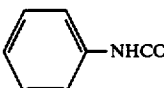
R ¹	R _b ¹	n	R _a ²	Dose (μg/ site)	Cellular immunity *1 skin reaction (mm diameter, M ± S.E.)	Humoral hemag- gluti- nation titer (M ± S.E. log ₂) *2	immunity hemolysin titer (M ± S.E. log ₂) *2
Control	"	"	"	10	14.6 ± 1.1 *3#2	12.4 ± 0.5 *3	7.3 ± 0.5 *3
OH	"	"	"	100	6.6 ± 1.1 *3	10.8 ± 0.2 *3	6.0 ± 0.2
CH ₃ CHCO	"	"	"	0	0	9.4 ± 0.4	5.4 ± 0.5
L	"	"	"	1	6.7 ± 0.8 *3	8.2 ± 0.1 *3	
	"	"	"	10	10.2 ± 1.6 *3	7.6 ± 0.5 *3	
CO	"	"	"	1	8.7 ± 1.8 *3	8.9 ± 0.2 *3	
Control	"	"	"	10	7.7 ± 2.4 *3	8.7 ± 0.2 *3	
	"	"	"	0	0	6.8 ± 0.3	
OH	"	"	"	1	11.5 ± 2.1 *3#1	10.8 ± 0.3 *3	7.1 ± 0.4 *3
CHCO	"	"	"				
D	"	"	"				
Control	"	"	"	10	11.1 ± 0.7 *3#2	12.3 ± 0.5 *3	8.5 ± 0 *3
OH	"	"	"	100	1.1 ± 1.1	9.1 ± 0.6	4.30 ± 6 *3
CH ₃ CHCO	"	"	"	0	0	9.2 ± 0.3	5.9 ± 0.1
D	H	"	"	1		10.0 ± 0.3 *3	5.9 ± 0.3
"	"	"	"	10		9.6 ± 0.3	6.9 ± 0.5 *3
"	"	"	"	100		10.0 ± 0.4	7.0 ± 0.4 *3
"	"	"	"	1		10.6 ± 0.3 *3	6.9 ± 0.3 *3
	"	"	"				
"	"	"	"	10		9.9 ± 1.0 *3	7.0 ± 0.4 *3
"	"	"	"	100		10.5 ± 0.4 *3	6.3 ± 0.5 *3
"	"	"	"	1	10.1 ± 1.1 *3#2	10.5 ± 0.2 *3	7.8 ± 0.3 *3
HOCH ₂	"	"	"	10	10.7 ± 1.3 *3	9.8 ± 0.4	7.3 ± 0.3 *3
Control	"	"	"	100	5.4 ± 2.2	9.6 ± 0.4	7.1 ± 0.2 *3
NH ₂	"	"	"	0	0.9 ± 0.9	8.5 ± 0.5	5.5 ± 0.3
CH ₃ CHCO	CH ₃	"	"	1	5.0 ± 2.2	8.5 ± 0.2 *3	
D	"	"	"				
	"	"	"	10	7.1 ± 0.9 *3	7.9 ± 0.4 *3	
"	"	"	"	1	5.4 ± 2.2 *3	7.6 ± 0.4 *3	
Control	"	"	"	10	12.6 ± 0.9 *3	8.4 ± 0.2 *3	
CH ₃ (CH ₂) ₅ CO	"	"	"	0	0	5.8 ± 0.3	
"	"	"	"	1	10.0 ± 1.2 *3	9.5 ± 0.4 *3	
CH ₃	"	"	"	10	7.5 ± 2.2 *3	9.2 ± 0.6 *3	
CHCO	"	"	"	1	5.5 ± 1.4 *3	8.7 ± 0.5 *3	
CH ₃	"	"	"				
Control	"	"	"	10	8.5 ± 1.0 *3	7.4 ± 0.6 *3	
	"	"	"	0	0	6.6 ± 0.6	
OCH ₂ CO	"	"	"	1	10.2 ± 1.1 *3	8.3 ± 0.3 *3	
CH ₃ CO	"	2	"	10	6.3 ± 1.3 *3	7.7 ± 0.3 *3	
"	"	"	"	1	9.0 ± 1.0 *3	7.7 ± 0.5	
"	"	"	"	10	8.1 ± 2.5 *3	8.4 ± 0.5 *3	
D	"	"	"				
L	"	"	"				

TABLE 4-continued

R ¹	R ^{b1}	n	R _a ²	Dose (μg/ site)	Cellular immunity *1 skin reaction (mm diameter, M ± S.E.)	Humoral hemag- gluti- nation titer (M ± S.E. log ₂)*2	immunity hemolysin titer (M ± S.E. log ₂)*2
	CH ₃	1	"	1	8.0 ± 1.1 *3	8.8 ± 0.3 *3	
Control	"	"	"	10	11.9 ± 2.5 *3	8.3 ± 0.3 *3	
	"	"	"	0	0	7.1 ± 0.1	
	"	"	"	0.1	11.2 ± 1.1 *3	10.4 ± 0.3 *3	
	"	"	"	1	7.6 ± 2.2 *3	10.2 ± 0.3 *3	
	"	"	"	10	6.4 ± 2.5	9.3 ± 0.2 *3	
	"	"	"	0.1	6.4 ± 2.7	9.9 ± 0.5 *3	
	"	"	"	1	10.2 ± 2.6 *3	10.6 ± 0.3 *3	
	"	"	"	10	8.6 ± 1.8 *3	10.6 ± 0.3 *3	
	"	"	"	0.1	10.5 ± 2.9 *3	9.1 ± 0.4	
Control	—	0	"	1	9.3 ± 0.7 *3	9.1 ± 0.4	
CH ₃ CO				10	4.2 ± 1.3	9.8 ± 0.2	
				0	0.9 ± 0.9	8.5 ± 0.4	
	CH ₃	1		1	6.4 ± 2.1 *3	8.8 ± 0.3	
				10	8.7 ± 1.0 *3	9.1 ± 0.4	
				1	13.7 ± 1.6 *3	11.1 ± 0.5	
				10	10.8 ± 0.9 *3	10.7 ± 0.3	

(2) Test Compound (2)

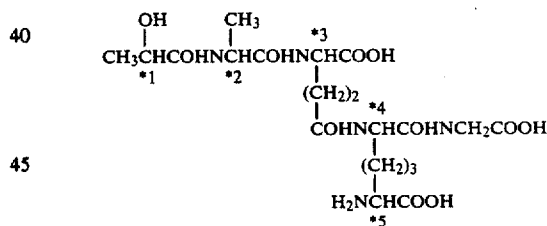


TABLE 5

Test Compound					Dose (μg/ site)	Cellular immunity*1 skin reaction (mm diameter, M ± S.E.)	Humoral Hemag- gluti- nation titer (M ± S.E. log ₂)*2	immunity hemolysin titer (M ± S.E. log ₂)*2
*1	*2	*3	*4	*5				
D	L	D	L	D	0	0	9.1 ± 0.19	4.5 ± 0.45
					0.1	8.2 ± 2.8*3	9.9 ± 0.10*3	6.4 ± 0.76
					1	14.5 ± 2.1*3	11.5 ± 0.61*3	7.7 ± 0.64*3
					10	11.0 ± 1.3*3	12.2 ± 0.56*3	7.1 ± 0.58
					100	4.2 ± 1.7*3	10.0 ± 1.01	5.9 ± 0.89
D	L	L	L	D	0	0.9 ± 0.9	8.5 ± 0.4	—
					1	2.4 ± 1.5	10.4 ± 0.5*3	—
					10	7.9 ± 2.1*3	11.0 ± 0*3	—
D	L	D		DL	0	0	9.2 ± 0.3	5.9 ± 0.1
					1	4.3 ± 1.8*3	10.2 ± 1.1*3	6.5 ± 0.4
					10	9.0 ± 3.2*3	10.4 ± 0.3*3	7.5 ± 1.2*3
					100	6.4 ± 1.7*3	10.9 ± 0.2*3	6.7 ± 1.2*3
L	L	D	L	D	0	0	6.8 ± 0.3	—
					1	6.7 ± 0.8*3	8.2 ± 0.1*3	—

TABLE 5-continued

Test Compound					Dose (μ g/ site)	Cellular immunity*1 skin reaction (mm diameter, M $\pm$ S.E.)	Humoral Hemag- gluti- nation titer (M $\pm$ S.E. log ₂)*2	immunity hemolysin titer (M $\pm$ S.E. log ₂)*2
*1	*2	*3	*4	*5				
					10	10.2 $\pm$ 1.6*3	7.6 $\pm$ 0.5*3	—

Note:

*1 The skin test was performed on the back by intradermal injection of 5 μ g of antigen dissolved in 0.1 ml of saline. Skin reaction of the test site was measured at 48 hours.*2 Antibody estimation was carried out as follows: Ovalbumin-coated sheep red blood cells were prepared by chromium chloride. Antibody titer was expressed as the reciprocal of the highest dilution of serum evoking threshold hemagglutination and hemolysis. The results were converted to log₂ unit.

*3 Significance was calculated by Student's t-test; P < 0.05

#1 2/5 of animal, Central necrosis

#2 1/5 of animal, Central necrosis

3. MITOGENIC ACTIVITIES FOR MOUSE SPLEEN CELLS

(Materials and Methods)

(1) Animal: Mice used for this experiment were male BALB/C strain, aged 13 weeks (Test 1) or female BALB/C strain, aged 9 weeks (Test 2).

(2) Tissue Culture Medium: The tissue culture medium employed was a complete medium designated Roswell Park Memorial Institute (RRMI)-1640. All media employed contained 100 units/ml of penicillin G and 100 μ g/ml of streptomycin sulfate and 10% fetal calf serum.

(3) Cell Preparation: Spleens were removed under sterile conditions, and washed with Hanks solution and then teased in the tissue culture medium. The cells were suspended in the tissue culture medium to contain 8×10^6 cells/ml.

(4) Culture Conditions: Into each hole of Microtest II tissue culture plate (8 $\times$ 12 hole) (maker: Falcon Plastics Co.) were poured 0.1 ml of the above cells suspension and 0.1 ml of the prescribed concentrate of the test compound as described below and then the cultures were incubated in triplicate at 37° C. in a humidified atmosphere (95% air, 5% CO₂) for 48 hours.

The control culture contained 0.1 ml of the culture medium instead of the medium containing the test compound.

(5) (3H) Thymidine uptake: In all tests, 20 μ l of 10 micro-curie (μ Ci)/ml of tritiated thymidine (3H-thymidine) was added to each hole for the final 24 hours of culture. After the culture was completed, the resultant cells were filtered with a filter paper, Whatman (GF83 and washed successively with saline and with 5% trichloroacetic acid. The filter paper was dried and placed in a scintillator (toluene 1 l, containing 0.1 g of p-bis(5-phenyloxazolyl)benzene and 4 g of 2,5-diphenyloxazolyl), and 3H-thymidine incorporated into DNA was measured.

(6) Stimulation Index

$$\text{Stimulation Index} = \frac{3\text{H-thymidine uptake (net cpm) at treatment}}{3\text{H-thymidine uptake (net cpm) at control}}$$

(7) Test Compound (1)

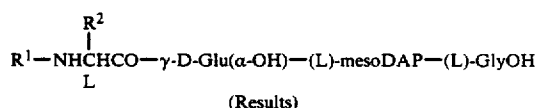


TABLE 6

		(1) Test 1		
R ¹	R ²	Concentration (μ g/ml)	3H-thymidine uptake net cpm:av $\pm$ S.E.	Stimulation Index
CH ₃ (CH ₂) ₅ CO	CH ₃	100	2,728 $\pm$ 73	5.2
		10	2,660 $\pm$ 45	5.0
		1	2,899 $\pm$ 126	5.5
		100	2,174 $\pm$ 142	4.1
		10	1,547 $\pm$ 79	2.9
		1	1,103 $\pm$ 76	2.1
	CH ₃	100	2,234 $\pm$ 170	4.2
		10	2,046 $\pm$ 138	3.9
		1	1,378 $\pm$ 112	2.6
	CH ₃	100	2,312 $\pm$ 158	4.4

TABLE 6-continued

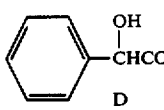
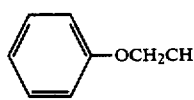
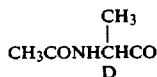
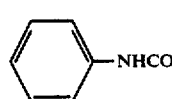
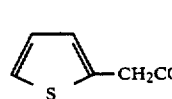
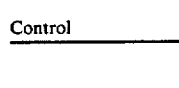
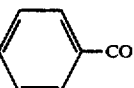
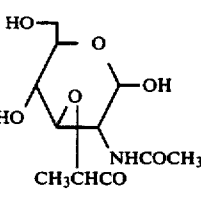
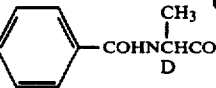
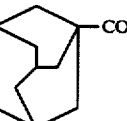
R ¹	R ²	Concentration (μg/ml)	3H-thymidine uptake net cpm:av ± S.E.	(1) Test 1
				Stimulation Index
Control	—	10	2,388 ± 97	4.5
	CH ₃	1	1,775 ± 94	3.4
		—	528 ± 28	1.0
		100	2,306 ± 54	5.5
	CH ₃	10	1,788 ± 314	4.3
		1	1,928 ± 87	4.6
HOCH ₂ CO	CH ₃	100	2,605 ± 117	6.2
		10	1,725 ± 86	4.1
		1	1,120 ± 55	2.7
CH ₃ CH ₂ CO	CH ₃	100	2,023 ± 142	4.9
		10	1,474 ± 44	3.5
		1	732 ± 28	1.8
	H	100	1,541 ± 73	3.7
		10	1,119 ± 63	2.7
		1	937 ± 30	2.2
		100	1,675 ± 22	4.0
	HOCH ₂	10	1,679 ± 98	4.0
		1	1,019	2.4
		100	1,541 ± 41	3.7
	CH ₃	10	1,468 ± 12	3.5
		1	927 ± 33	2.2
		100	1,635 ± 192	3.9
	—	10	1,573 ± 69	3.8
		1	1,001 ± 73	2.4
Control	CH ₃	—	417 ± 13	1.0
	CH ₃	100	1,979 ± 174	5.0
	CH ₃	10	2,343 ± 22	5.9
		1	1,469 ± 224	3.7
		100	1,537 ± 113	3.9
	CH ₃	10	1,788 ± 30	4.5
		1	1,144 ± 142	2.9
		100	1,627 ± 38	4.1
	CH ₃	10	1,837 ± 138	4.6
		1	1,338 ± 74	3.4
		100	1,528 ± 122	3.8
	CH ₃	10	1,225 ± 42	3.1
		1	866 ± 37	2.2
		100	1,588 ± 167	4.0
	CH ₃	10	1,469 ± 87	3.7
		1	1,065 ± 89	2.7
Control	—	—	399 ± 51	1.0

TABLE 7

R ¹	R ²	Concentration (μg/ml)	3H-thymidine uptake net cpm: av ± S.E.	Stimulation Index
CH ₃ CO	CH ₃	100	1,920 ± 135	4.2
		10	1,067 ± 63	2.4
		1	785 ± 33	1.7
	CH ₃	100	2,772 ± 215	6.1
		10	2,326 ± 140	5.1
		1	1,713 ± 102	3.8
	CH ₃	100	2,979 ± 199	6.6
		10	2,177 ± 66	4.8
		1	1,477 ± 46	3.3
	CH ₃	100	2,186 ± 164	4.8
		10	1,370 ± 58	3.0
		1	756 ± 42	1.7
Control		—	452 ± 30	1.0
	CH ₃	100	4,227 ± 217	4.2
		10	3,664 ± 122	3.7
		1	2,809 ± 83	2.8
CH ₃ (CH ₂) ₁₀ CO	CH ₃	100	4,027 ± 87	4.0
		10	3,963 ± 198	4.0
		1	4,210 ± 255	4.2
	CH ₃	100	3,967 ± 348	4.0
		10	2,933 ± 126	2.9
		1	2,134 ± 32	2.1
Control		—	1,000 ± 94	1.0

(8) Test Compound (2)

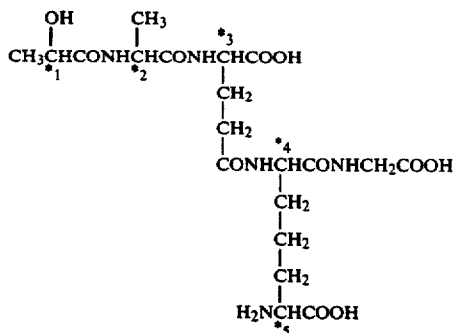


TABLE 8

Test Compound	Concentration (μg/ml)	3H-thymidine uptake net cpm: av ± S.E.	Stimulation Index
*1 *2 *3 *4 *5 Test			
D L D L D 1	100	2,028 ± 89	4.9
	10	1,486 ± 120	3.6
	1	835 ± 64	2.0

TABLE 8-continued

Test Compound	Concentration (μg/ml)	3H-thymidine uptake net cpm: av ± S.E.	Stimulation Index
*1 *2 *3 *4 *5 Test			
5	0	417 ± 13	1.0
	100	3,666 ± 42	4.1
	10	3,223 ± 402	3.6
	1	2,741 ± 319	3.0
	0	901 ± 105	1.0
10	100	1,284 ± 131	3.1
	10	1,414 ± 38	3.4
	1	996 ± 35	2.4
	0	417 ± 13	1.0
	100	2,772 ± 215	6.1
	10	2,326 ± 140	5.1
	1	1,713 ± 102	3.8
	0	452 ± 30	1.0
15	100	1,271 ± 29	3.2
	10	1,003 ± 50	2.5
	1	742 ± 61	1.9
20	0	399 ± 51	1.0

4. PROTECTIVE EFFICACY IN EXPERIMENTAL INFECTION IN MICE

(1) In determining the protective efficacy against experimental infections in mice, the test compound was dissolved in and diluted with sterile saline to provide prescribed concentrations of drug.

Male ICR-strain mice, aged 4 weeks were used in groups of ten mice. *E. coli* 22 was cultivated overnight at 37° C. on trypticase soy agar and then were suspended in a sterile saline to obtain microbial cell concentration of 9.0×10^7 CFU/ml. Mice were inoculated intraperitoneally with 0.2 ml of the suspension. Each of the test drugs was given intraperitoneally in various doses to a group of ten mice 24 hours before challenge.

Survival percent were found from the number of the surviving animals after four days of injection. Results are shown in Table 9.

(1) Test Compound (1):

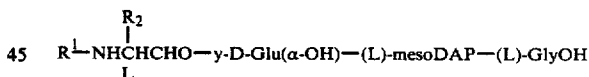
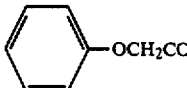
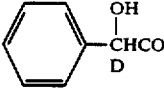
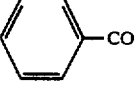
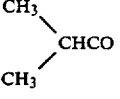
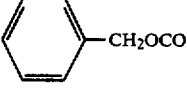
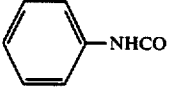
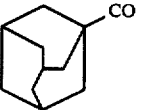
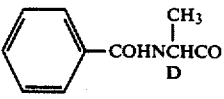
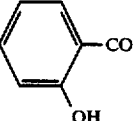
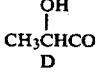
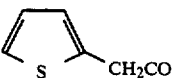
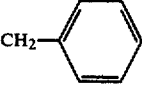


TABLE 9

R ¹	R ²	Survival (%)	
		Dose 10 mg/kg	Dose 1 mg/kg
50	CH ₃ (CH ₂) ₅ CO	60	70
	(CH ₃) ₃ CCO	70	70
55	CH ₃ (CH ₂) ₁₀ CO	50	60
	CH ₃	88.9	100
	CH ₃ COHNCHCO D		
60	OCH ₃ CH ₃ CHCO DL	100	88.9
	CH ₃	100	88.9
65			

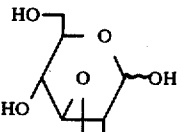
57

TABLE 9-continued

R ¹	R ²	Survival (%)		5
		Dose 10 mg/kg	Dose 1 mg/kg	
	CH ₃	87.5	75.0	
	CH ₃	30	50	10
	CH ₃	20	60	15
	CH ₃	50	30	20
	CH ₃	70	70	25
	CH ₃	50	50	30
	CH ₃	50	50	35
	CH ₃	80	60	40
		60	60	45
		40	70	50

58

TABLE 9-continued

R ¹	R ²	Survival (%)	
		Dose 10 mg/kg	Dose 1 mg/kg
HOCH ₂ CO CH ₃ CH ₂ CO	CH ₃ CH ₃	75 100	100 87.5
		87.5	100
	HOCH ₂	87.5	87.5
	H	100	100
	CH ₃	87.5	62.5
	CH ₃	100	87.5
	CH ₃	100	87.5
	CH ₃	62.5	25.0

(2) Test Compound (2)

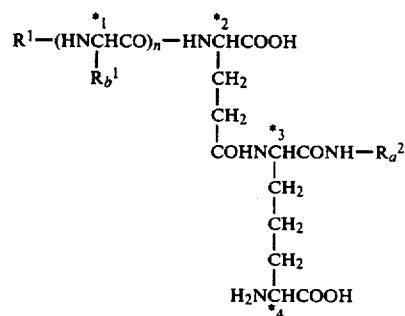


TABLE 10

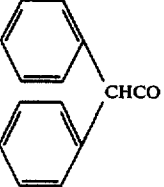
R ¹	R _b ¹	n	R _a ¹	*1	*2	*3	*4	Survival (%)	
								Dose 10 mg/kg	Dose 1 mg/kg
	CH ₃	1	CH ₂ COOH	L	D	L	D	75.0	50.0

TABLE 10-continued

R ¹	R _b ¹	n	R _a ¹	*1	*2	*3	*4	Survival (%)	
								Dose 10 mg/kg	Dose 1 mg/kg
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	87.5	75.0
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	75.0	87.5
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	75.0	87.5
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	87.5	62.5
	"	"		"	"	"	"	87.5	87.5
	"	"		"	"	"	"	70.0	70.0
"	"	"		"	"	"	"	90.0	80.0
"	"	"		"	"	"	"	60	60
	—	0		—	"	"	"	66.6	22.2
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	100	88.9
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	87.5	75.0
	—	0		—	"	"	"	87.5	50.0
	"	"		"	"	"	"	75.0	87.5
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	62.5	50.0
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	62.5	62.5
	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	87.5	100
	"	"		"	"	"	"	87.5	100

TABLE 10-continued

R ¹	R _b ¹	n	R _a ¹	*1	*2	*3	*4	Survival (%)	
								Dose 10 mg/kg	Dose 1 mg/kg
$\begin{array}{c} \text{DL} \\ \\ \text{CH}_3(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CHCO} \\ \\ \text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array}$	CH ₃	1	"	"	"	"	"	87.5	50.0
$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \\ \text{CH}_3\text{CHCO} \\ \\ \text{D} \end{array}$	"	"	"	"	"	"	L	100	88.9
"	"	"	"	"	L	"	D	—	50.0
$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \\ \text{CH}_3\text{CHCO} \\ \\ \text{D} \end{array}$	"	"	"	D	"	"	"	100	87.5
$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \\ \text{CH}_3\text{CHCO} \\ \\ \text{D} \end{array}$	"	"	"	"	D	"	"	75.0	75.0
CH ₃ (CH ₂) ₃ CO	"	"	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \\ \text{—CHCOOH} \\ \\ \text{D} \end{array}$	L	"	"	"	100	44.4

(2) Test Compound (2)

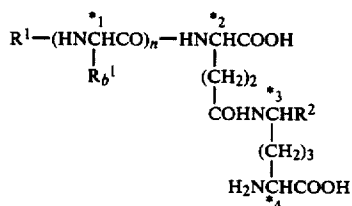


TABLE 10

R ¹	R _b ¹	n	R ²	*1	*2	*3	*4	Survival	
								Dose 10 mg/kg	Dose 1 mg/kg
CH ₃ (CH ₂) ₃ CO	CH ₃	1	COOH	L	D	L	D	66.6	88.9
"	"	0	"	"	"	"	"	88.9	100
H	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	88.9	88.9
$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \\ \text{CH}_3\text{CHCO} \\ \\ \text{D} \end{array}$	CH ₃	1	"	L	"	"	"	100	62.5
"	"	"	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \\ \text{CONCOOH} \end{array}$	"	"	"	"	87.5	75.0
"	"	"	H	"	"	—	"	40.0	60.0

(2) In determining the protective efficacy against experimental infections in mice, the FR-900156 substance was dissolved and diluted in sterile water to provide three-fold concentrations of drug for testing.

Male DDY-strain mice, aged 6 weeks and averaging 24–26 g in weight, were used in groups of four mice each.

Overnight cultures of Escherichia coli No. 22 in Difco Nutrient Broth was diluted to 1/100 in fresh medium and incubated at 30° C. with shaking. When the cell density of 1×10^8 /ml was obtained, 0.2 ml of the culture was injected intraperitoneally. All the animals receiving

the challenge and not treated with the drug died within 48 hours of the infection.

30 One-fifth ml of the FR-900156 substance solution was injected subcutaneously, 1,4,5, and 6 days before the infection.

Two days after infection, the test was considered complete and survival records of that day were made.

35 The test results are shown in Table 11

TABLE 11

Dose (mg/mouse/day)	Survival/infected
0.01	10/10

0.003	10/10
0.001	10/10
0.0003	8/10
0.0001	4/10
Control	0/10

5. mANTICANCER ACTIVITY

Female rats of Donru Strain, aged 6 weeks, were used in groups of three rats each.

Suspension of ascites hepatoma AH 66 in 0.5 ml of Hank's solution was transplanted intraperitoneally

(5E10₄ cells/rat). About 13 days later, all the control animals dies of ascites. Prolongation of survival time in comparison with the controls is the criterion of effectiveness.

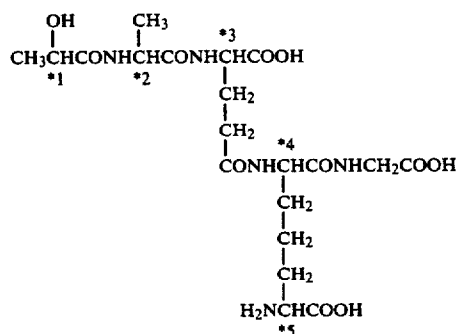
Therapy was given 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, days before tumor transplantation. The FR-900156 substance was dissolved and diluted in sterile saline water to provide three-fold dilutions for testing and the said sterile saline solution of the FR-900156 substance was given intraperitoneally to the animals. The test results are shown in Table 12.

TABLE 12

Dose (mg/rat/day)	Life span (days)
1.0	14, >30, >30
0.3	13, >30, >30
0.1	13, >30, >30
0.03	13, 13, 13
Control (saline)	13, 13, 13

6. INDUCING ACTIVITY OF INTERFERON

Test Compound:



Male ICR strain mice aged 4 to 6 weeks were used in these experiments. Spleens of these mice were removed and the capacity of spleen cells to produce interferon in vitro by the treatment of test compound was tested.

Single spleen cell subpensions were prepared in medium RPMI-1640 supplement with streptomycin (100 γ /ml), penicillin G (100 γ /ml), 1% glutamine and 2-mercaptoethanol (5×10^{-5} M).

These were cultured at 37° C. at a concentration of 4×10^7 cells/ml with or without test compound dissolved with culture medium (dose: 100, 10, 1 μ g/ml). After 24 hours, supernatants of these cultures were collected and those interferon activities were titrated by cytopathic effect (CPE) inhibition test in L cell-VSV system. Antiviral titer was expressed in IU/ml base on standard interferon.

The results are as the following table 13.

TABLE 13

Test Compound					Dose	IF Titer (IU/ml)
*1	*2	*3	*4	*5	(μ g/ml)	
D	L	D	L	D	100	14
					10	16
					1	10
					0	<6.5
D	L	D	DL		100	62
					10	40
					1	39
					0	7.5
D	D	D	L	D	100	29
					10	23
					1	11

TABLE 13-continued

Test Compound					Dose	IF Titer (IU/ml)
*1	*2	*3	*4	*5	(μ g/ml)	
D	D	L	L	D	0	<11
					100	38
					10	11
					1	<11
					0	<11

7. ACUTE TOXICITY IN MICE

1 g/kg (i.v.): no toxicity.

8. CELL TOXICITY (mouse L cell)

500 μ g/ml: no toxic effect.

The pharmaceutical composition of this invention can be used in the form of a pharmaceutical preparation, for example, in solid, semisolid or liquid form, which contains an active substance of this invention in admixture with an organic or inorganic carrier or excipient suitable for external, enteral or parenteral applications. The active ingredient may be compounded, for example, with the usual non-toxic, pharmaceutically acceptable carriers for tablets, pellets, capsules, suppositories, solutions, emulsions, suspensions, and any other form suitable for use. The carriers which can be used are water, glucose, lactose, gum acacia, gelatin, mannitol, starch paste, magnesium trisilicate, talc, corn starch, keratin, colloidal silica, potato starch, urea and other carriers suitable for use in manufacturing preparations, in solid, semisolid, or liquid form, and in addition auxiliary, stabilizing, thickening and coloring agents and perfumes may be used. The pharmaceutical compositions can also contain preservatives or bacteriostatic agents to keep the active ingredient in the desired preparations stable in activity. The active object compound is included in the pharmaceutical composition in an amount sufficient to produce the desired therapeutic effect upon the process or condition of diseases.

For applying this composition to humans, it is preferably to apply it by intravenous, intramuscular or oral administration. While the dosage or therapeutically effective amount of the object compound of this invention varies from and also depends upon the age and condition of each individual patient to be treated, a daily dose of about 2-100 mg of the active ingredient/kg of a human being or an animal is generally given for treating diseases, and an average single dose of about 50 mg, 100 mg, 250 mg, and 500 mg is generally administered.

The following examples are given for purpose of illustrating this invention.

In the following examples, starting compounds and object compounds are expressed by using the following abbreviations:

Lac: Lactyl

Ala: Alanyl

Glu: Glutamyl

Gly: Glycyl

DAP: α,β -Diaminopimelyl

Z: benzyloxycarbonyl

Boc: t-butoxycarbonyl

Bzl: benzyl

Me: methyl

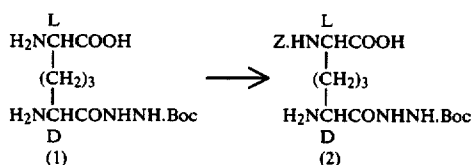
Et: ethyl

Su: N-hydroxysuccinimide

Bzh: benzhydryl

Ac: acetyl
Val: Valyl
Ser: Seryl
Phe: Phenylalanyl
Asp: Aspartyl
Lys: Lysyl
Leu: Leucyl
Sar: Sarcosyl
 γ -Abu: γ -Aminobutyryl
Aad: 2-Amino adipyl

Preparation 1



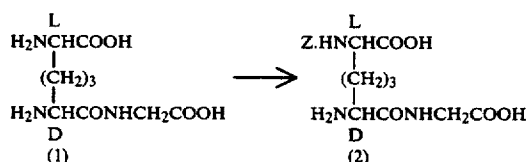
meso-DAP(D)-NHNH-Boc (1) (5.4 g) and cupric chloride (dihydrate) (1.52 g) were dissolved in a mixture of 0.5 N aqueous sodium hydroxide (60 ml). The solution was stirred for thirty minutes at ambient temperature. The solution was cooled to 0° C. and benzyloxycarbonyl chloride (4.6 g) was added dropwise thereto in the course of twenty minutes, maintaining the pH over 11. The stirring was continued for an additional one hour at the same temperature. After the residue was completed, the solution was adjusted to pH 7 with 5% aqueous hydrochloric acid and then hydrogen sulfide gas was passed through the solution for about fifteen minutes. To the reaction mixture was added ethyl acetate (50 ml) and the mixture was adjusted to pH 4 with 5% aqueous hydrochloric acid. The ethyl acetate layer and the aqueous layer were divided out, and the ethyl acetate layer was extracted four times with water (30 ml). All of the aqueous layers were combined and concentrated to 40 ml under reduced pressure to give a crystals. The crystals were collected by filtration, washed with water to give Z-(L)meso-DAP(D)-NHNH#BOC (2) (3.5 g). The mother liquor and the washings were collected and extracted twice with n-butanol (40 ml). The extracts were combined and concentrated under reduced pressure to give a residue.

The residue was triturated with ether and collected by filtration to give additional Z-(L)meso-DAP(D)-NHNH#Boc (2) (1.2 g) as a crude solid, which was recrystallized from water. mp. 194–196 (dec).

N.M.R. (CD_3OD), δ (ppm): 1.67 (9H, s), 1.6–2.1 (6H, m) 3.6–4.2 (2H, m), 5.12(2H, s), 7.43 (5H, s).

$[\alpha]_D = -20.8^\circ$ (C: 0.5 methanol).

Preparation 2



3 N Aqueous sodium hydroxide (6.0 ml) was added to a solution of meso-DAP-(D)-GlyOH (1) (1.85) and cupric chloride (dihydrate) (1.28 g) in water (190 ml) at 5° C. To the solution was added benzyloxycarbonyl chloride (5.4 ml), and the resulting solution was stirred at 5° C., maintaining the pH 11–12 with 3 N aqueous sodium

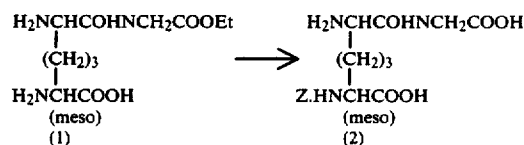
hydroxide. The stirring was continued for 4.5 hours and an additional benzyloxycarbonyl chloride (3.2 ml) was added to the reaction mixture. The mixture was stirred at 5° C. for six hours, maintaining the pH 11–12 with 3 N aqueous sodium hydroxide.

The reaction mixture was acidified to pH 2 with 3 N aqueous hydrochloric acid and washed twice with ether. The separated aqueous layer was adjusted to pH 4.5 with 3 N aqueous sodium hydroxide and bubbled with hydrogen sulfide and then filtered. The filtrate was concentrated to about 100 ml and the concentrate was allowed to stand in a refrigerator to give crystals. The crystals were collected by filtration and washed successively with water, methanol and ether to give Z-(L)-meso-DAP-(D)-GlyOH (2) (230 mg). mp 161.5–162.0 (dec).

N.M.R. ($\text{CD}_3\text{OD}-\text{D}_2\text{O}$) δ (ppm): 1.2–2.2 (6H, m), 3.7–4.3 (4H, m), 5.10 (2H, s), 7.39 (5H, s), $[\alpha]_D = -25.3^\circ$ (C:0.5 methanol).

The filtrate was concentrated and chromatographed on a macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP20 (trade mark, maker: Mitsubishi Chemical Industry Co., Ltd.) 125 ml). After washing with water, elution was carried out with 50% aqueous methanol and then 80% aqueous methanol. The eluates were combined and evaporated to dryness and the crude crystals thus obtained was dissolved in hot methanol (80 ml) and filtered. To the filtrate was added water (15 ml) and the solution was concentrated to give crude crystals. The crude crystals were washed successively with isopropanol ether and ether to give Z-(L)-meso-DAP-(D)-GlyOH (2) (2.22 g). The same object compound (2) (165 mg) was additionally obtained from the mother liquor.

Preparation 3

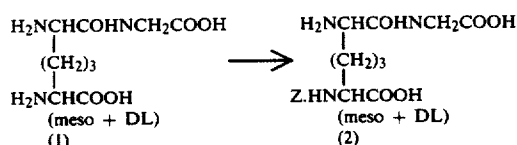


meso DAP(OH)GlyOEt (1) (4.10 g) was dissolved in water (30 ml) and cupric chloride (dihydrates) (2.08 g) was added to the solution. The mixture was stirred at 5°–7° C. for five hours, maintaining pH 11 with 2% aqueous sodium hydroxide.

To the reaction mixture was added benzyloxycarbonyl chloride (10.0 g) and the resulting mixture was stirred at 5°–7° C. for five hours, maintaining pH 11. An additional benzyloxycarbonyl chloride (4.0 g) was added to the reaction mixture. The resulting mixture was stirred for four hours and adjusted to pH 1 with dil. hydrochloric acid and washed with ethyl acetate. The aqueous layer was adjusted to pH 7 and hydrogen sulfide gas was passed through the solution. The precipitates were filtered off and the filtrate was concentrated. The concentrate was adjusted to pH 3.2–3.4 and passed through a column packed with a macroporous nonionic absorption resin, HP20 (180 ml). Elution was carried out with 50% aqueous methanol and the eluate was evaporated to dryness to give Z-meso DAP(OH)-GlyOH (2) (4.3 g) as a solid.

N.M.R. ($\text{D}_2\text{O} + \text{NaHCO}_3$) δ (ppm): 1.38–1.88 (6H, m), 3.75 (2H, s), 3.79 (1H, t, J=4 Hz), 3.96 (1H, t, J=4 Hz), 5.11 (2H, s), 7.44 (5H, s).

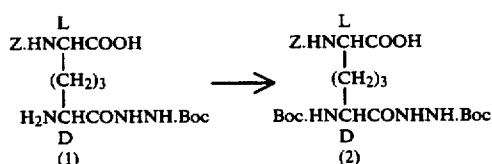
Preparation 4



Cupric carbonate (1.173 g) was added to a solution of DAP(OH)GlyOH (1) (1.7 g) in water (50 ml) and the mixture was refluxed for two hours. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was adjusted to pH 11.5 with 2 N aqueous sodium hydroxide. Benzyloxycarbonyl chloride (3.23 ml) was added to the reaction mixture at 0° C. and the resulting mixture was stirred at 0° C. for six hours, maintaining pH 11.5. The reaction mixture was neutralized with dil. aqueous hydrochloric acid and dechelated by hydrogen sulfide gas. The resulting mixture was filtered and the filtrate was chromatographed on a macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP20 (100 ml). Elution was carried out with 80% aqueous methanol and the eluate was evaporated to dryness to give Z-DAP(OH)GlyOH (2) (1.4 g) as a solid.

N.M.R. (CD₃OD) δ(ppm): 1.38–1.88 (6H, m), 3.75 (2H, s), 3.79 (1H, t, J=4 Hz), 3.96 (1H, t, J=4 Hz), 5.11 (2H, s), 7.44 (5H, s).

Preparation 5



(1) Preparation 5-1

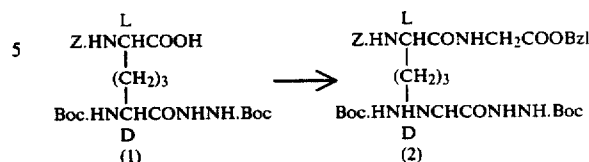
Z-(L)-meso-DAP(D)-NHNHBoc (1) (5.0 g), t-butylcarbonic anhydride (3.0 g) and triethylamine (2.54 g) in a mixture of water (50 ml) and dioxane (50 ml) were stirred for three hours at ambient temperature. Dioxane was distilled off under reduced pressure and the resulting aqueous layer was washed with ether. The aqueous layer was adjusted to pH 2 with 5% aqueous hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated aqueous sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate to give Z-(L)-Boc(D)-meso-DAP(D)-NHNHBoc (2) (6.0 g), which was recrystallized from isopropyl ether. mp 146–148 (dec).

N.M.R. (CDCl₃) δ(ppm): 1.4–2.1 (6H, m), 1.67 (9H, s), 4.1–4.5 (2H, m), 5.13 (2H, s), 5.50 (1H, broad s), 6.0 (1H, broad s), 7.05 (1H, broad s), 7.35 (5H, s), 8.37 (1H, broad s), 8.90 (1H, broad s).

(2) Preparation 5-2

Z-(L)-Boc(D)-meso-DAP(D)-NHNHBoc (2) (0.50 g) was obtained from Z-(L)-meso-DAP(D)-NHNHBoc (1) (438 mg) by substantially the same manner as that of Example 5-1 provided that t-butyl S-4,6-dimethylpyrimidine-2-ylthiocarbonate (288 mg) was employed in place of t-butylcarbonic anhydride.

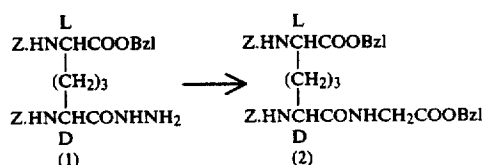
Preparation 6



Z-(L)-Boc(D)-meso-DAP(D)-NHNHBoc (1) (10.8 g) and N-methyl-morpholine (2.02 g) were dissolved in methylene chloride (110 ml) and stirred at –10°–15° C. Isobutyl chlorocarbonate (2.73 g) was added dropwise to the solution and the mixture was stirred for thirty minutes at ambient temperature. To the solution was added dropwise a solution of glycine benzyl ester p-toluenesulfonate (6.75 g) and N-methyl morpholine (2.02 g) in methylene chloride (110 ml). The solution was stirred for two hours at –10°–15° C. and for an hour at ambient temperature. Methylene chloride was distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue was dissolved into a mixture of ethyl acetate (150) and 1% aqueous hydrochloric acid (60 ml). The ethyl acetate layer was separated and washed successively with water 2% aqueous sodium bicarbonate and aqueous sodium chloride in turn. The ethyl acetate layer was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure. The residue thus obtained was recrystallized from ether to give Z-(L)-Boc(D)-meso-DAP(L)-GlyoBzl-(D)-NHNHBoc. (2) (12.3 g), mp 85–87.

N.M.R. (CDCl₃) δ(ppm): 1.43 (18H, s), 1.5–2.2 (6H, m), 4.10 (2H, d, J=6 Hz), 4.1–4.5 (2H, m), 5.10 (2H, s), 5.17 (2H, s), 5.40 (1H, d, J=8 Hz), 5.90 (1H, d, J=8 Hz), 6.73 (1H, broad s), 7.33 (10H, s), 7.73 (1H, broad s), 8.4–8.6 (1H, m).

Preparation 7



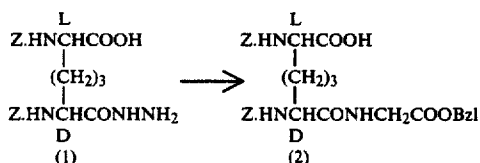
To a solution of di-Z-meso-DAP(L)-oBzl-(D)-NHNH₂ trifluoroacetic acid salt (1) (6.435 g) in dimethylformamide (25 ml) was added 3.29 N hydrochloric acid in dimethylformamide (5.80 ml) at –50° C. and then isoamyl nitrite (1.41 ml) was added. The solution was allowed to warm to –20° C. and then stirred for ten minutes. The resulting solution was cooled to –50° C. and triethylamine (3.97 ml) was added thereto. To the solution was added a mixture of glycine benzyl ester p-toluenesulfonate (6.41 g) and triethylamine (7.95 ml) in dimethylformamide (12 ml). The heterogeneous mixture was stirred at 3°–7° C. for six hours and allowed to stand in a refrigerator for 48 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with a mixture of ethyl acetate (170 ml) and methylene chloride (30 ml) and washed successively with 5% aqueous phosphoric acid, water dil. sodium bicarbonate, water, and brine. The mixture was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and the solvent was evaporated to dryness to give crystalline materials (6.4 g). The crystalline materials were chromato-

graphed on silica gel (90 g) and eluted with a mixture of methylene chloride and ethyl acetate (3:1). The eluate was evaporated to give a residue. Crystallization was carried out from ethyl acetate to give crude crystals of di-Z-meso-DAP(L)O_{Bz}L-(D)-GlyoBzL (2) (5.32 g), mp 131°–133° C.

An aliquote (450 mg) of the above crystals were further purified by chromatography on silica gel (eluted with a mixture of methylene chloride and ethyl acetate (1:3), followed by recrystallization from a mixture of ethyl acetate and ether (5:2) to give fine needles. mp 138°–139.5° C. $[\alpha]_D^{20} = +4.6^\circ$ (C=1, chloroform).

N.M.R. (CDCl₃), δ (ppm): 1.1–2.1 (6H, m), 3.98 (2H, d, J=6 Hz), 3.8–4.5 (2H, m), 5.04 (4H, s), 5.08 (2H, s), 5.10 (2H, s), 5.49 (2H, t, J=7 Hz), 6.64 (1H, t, J=6 Hz), 7.28 (20H, s).

Preparation 8

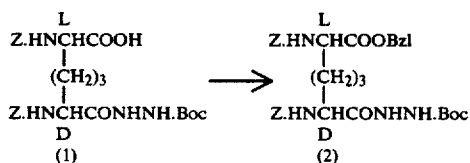


A solution of sodium nitrite (0.97 g) in water (10 ml) was added to a two-phase solution of di-Z-meso-DAP(D)-NHNH₂ (6.50 g) in a mixture of 1 N aqueous hydrochloric acid (42 ml) and ethyl acetate (30 ml) at 0° C. The resulting mixture was stirred at 0° C. for five minutes and a cooled ethyl acetate (30 ml) was added thereto. The ethyl acetate layer was collected and washed four times with dil. sodium chloride, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and then filtered. To the filtrate was added a solution of H-GlyoBzL in methylene chloride (30 ml), which was prepared by desalting glycine benzyl ester p-toluenesulfonate (11.6 g) with potassium carbonate in a mixture of methylene chloride and water in a conventional manner, and then triethylamine (1.92 ml) was added. The resulting mixture was kept at 4° C. for 20 hours. The reaction mixture was washed successively with dil. hydrochloric acid and (three times), brine, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and evaporated to dryness to give an oil (6.5 g), which was chromatographed on silica gel (45 g).

Elution was carried out with a mixture of methylene chloride and methanol (100:5) to give amorphous solid (5.15 g). The solid was crystallized from a mixture of ethyl acetate and ether (1:2) to give di-Z-meso-DAP(D)GlyoBzL (2) (1.54 g).

N.M.R. (acetone-d₆) δ (ppm): 1.3–2.4 (6H, m), 3.9–4.6 (2H, m), 4.06 (2H, d, J=6 Hz), 5.12 (4H, s), 5.18 (2H, s), 6.36–6.9 (2H, broad d, J=8 Hz), 7.38 (15H, s), 7.77 (1H, t, J=6 Hz).

Preparation 9

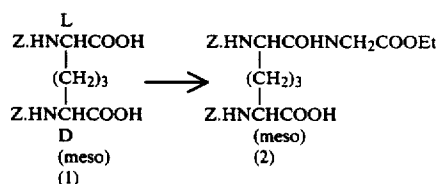


A mixture of di-Z-meso-DAP(D)-NHNHBoc (1) (8.83 g), benzyl bromide (3.66 ml) and triethylamine (4.30 ml) in dimethylformamide (40 ml) was stirred at

ambient temperature for 19 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (150 ml) and the solution was washed successively with dil. phosphoric acid, water, dil. sodium bicarbonate, water and brine. The solution was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and evaporated to give an amorphous solid (9.0 g), which was purified by column chromatography using silica gel (90 g), and fractions eluted with a mixture of methylene chloride and ethyl acetate (1:3) were combined and evaporated to dryness to give a solid (8.65 g). Recrystallization from a mixture of ether and hexane gave di-Z-meso-DAP(L)O_{Bz}L-(D)-NHNHBoc (2) (7.40 g).

N.M.R. (CDCl₃), δ (ppm): 1.40 (9H, s), 1.1–2.0 (6H, m), 4.04–4.7 (2H, m), 5.17 (4H, s), 5.23 (2H, s), 6.87 (1H, broad s), 7.48 (15H, s), 8.57 (1H, broad s) $[\alpha]_D = +13.2^\circ$ (C=1, chloroform).

Preparation 10

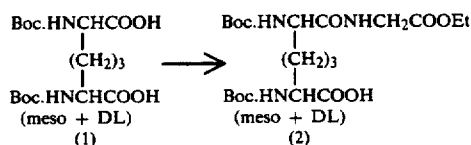


To a cold mixture of di-Z-(D)meso-DAP (1) (13.8 g) and triethylamine (6.1 g) in methylene chloride (150 ml) was added dropwise in the course of five minutes a cold solution of isobutoxycarbonyl chloride (5.33 g) in methylene chloride (30 ml) at –10° C.

The mixture was stirred at –10° C. –12° C. for twenty five minutes. To the mixture was added dropwise a solution of glycine ethyl ester hydrochloride (5.44 g) and triethylamine (3.94 g) in methylene chloride (200 ml) at –10° C. –12° C. in the course of twenty minutes. The solution was stirred at –10° C. for thirty minutes. To the reaction mixture was added water and the mixture was adjusted to pH 2 with 1 N aqueous hydrochloric acid, and then washed with saturated aqueous sodium chloride and with 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The methylene chloride layer was washed with water and then concentrated. To the concentrate was added ethyl acetate and insoluble materials were filtered off and the filtrate was extracted three times with 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate (pH 8). The extract was adjusted to pH 2 with 1 N aqueous hydrochloric acid and then extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed twice with water and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The extract was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated. The oily residue thus obtained was allowed to stand in a refrigerator to give crystals. The crystals was washed with isopropyl ether and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate to give di-Z-meso-DAP(OH)GlyOEt (7.73 g).

N.M.R. (DMSO-d₆) δ (ppm): 1.20 (3H, t, J=7 Hz), 1.0–1.9 (6H, m), 3.7–4.2 (2H, m), 3.80 (2H, d, J=6 Hz), 4.03 (2H, q, J=7 Hz), 5.00 (4H, s), 7.33 (10H, s).

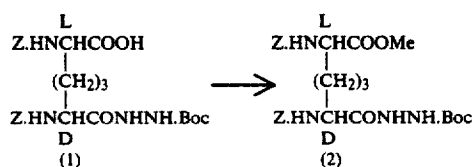
Preparation 11



A mixture of di-Boc-meso-DAP di-dicyclohexylamine salt (1)(18.5 g) in methylene chloride (160 ml) was added to a solution of triethylamine hydrochloride (8.0 g) in methylene chloride (200 ml) and the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for two hours and cooled to -10°C . To the cold mixture was added dropwise a solution of ethoxycarbonyl chloride (3.46 g) in methylene chloride (10 ml), maintaining the temperature at -10°C . The solution was stirred at -10°C for thirty minutes. To the reaction mixture was added dropwise a mixture of glycine ethyl ester hydrochloride (4.45 g) and triethylamine (3.23 g) in methylene chloride (200 ml) in the course of thirty minutes, maintaining the temperature at -10°C . The mixture was stirred at the same temperature for thirty minutes. The reaction mixture was adjusted to pH 1 with 1 N aqueous hydrochloric acid and then washed twice with water and twice with saturated aqueous sodium chloride. The organic layer was concentrated and the concentrate was dissolved in ethyl acetate. Extraction was carried out twice with 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The extract was adjusted to pH 2 with 1 N aqueous hydrochloric acid. Extraction was carried out with ethyl acetate and the organic layer was washed successively with saturated aqueous sodium chloride, 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate, and further washed with saturated aqueous sodium chloride. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and filtered. The filtrate was concentrated to give an oily di-Boc-meso-DAP(OH)GlyOEt (2)(5.16 g).

N.M.R. (CDCl_3), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.30 (3H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 1.43 (18H, s), 1.1–2.1 (6H, m), 4.07 (2H, t, $J=6$ Hz), 3.84–4.5 (2H, m), 4.15 (2H, q, $J=7$ Hz).

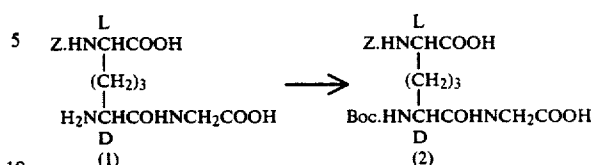
Preparation 12



A solution of diazomethane (1 g/100 ml, 6 ml) was added to a solution of di-Z-meso-DAP-(D)-NHNHBoc (1)(0.62 g) in ether (15 ml) at 0°C until the solution became yellow. The reaction mixture was evaporated to dryness and the residue was chromatographed on silica gel (14 g) and elution was carried out with a mixture of methylene chloride and ethyl acetate (5:3) to give di-Z-meso-DAP(L)Me-(D)NHNHBoc.

N.M.R. (CDCl_3), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.2–2.2 (6H, m), 1.33 (9H, s), 3.73 (3H, s), 4.1–4.6 (2H, m), 5.12 (4H, s), 5.74 (1H, d, $J=8$ Hz), 5.78 (1H, d, $J=8$ Hz), 6.68 (1H, broad s), 7.35 (10H, s), 8.50 (1H, broad s) $[\alpha]_D^{23} = +12.7^\circ\text{C}$. (C=1, ethanol).

Preparation 13

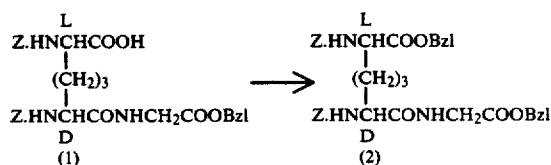


To a suspension of Z-(L)-meso-DAP-(D)-GlyOH (1) (2.072 g) in water (20 ml) was added triethylamine (2.90 ml) and the mixture was stirred at 0°C for a few minutes. A solution of t-butylcarbonyl anhydride (1.54 g) in dioxane (20 ml) was added to the resulting solution. The solution was stirred at ambient temperature for 6.5 hours and concentrated. The concentrate was diluted with water (50 ml) and ethyl acetate (100 ml) was added thereto. The mixture was cooled to 0°C and acidified to pH 2 with 1 N aqueous hydrochloric acid.

The organic layer was separated and washed with water and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate and then evaporated to give Z-(L)-Boc(D)meso-DAP(D)-GlyOH (2) (2.88 g) as an amorphous solid.

N.M.R. ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.37 (9H, s), 1.1–1.9 (6H, m), 3.6–4.2 (2H, m), 3.73 (2H, d, $J=5.5$ Hz), 5.02 (2H, s), 6.75 (1H, m), 7.33 (5H, s), 7.50 (1H, broad d, $J=9$ Hz), 8.07 (1H, broad t, $J=5.5$ Hz), 12.6 (2H, m).

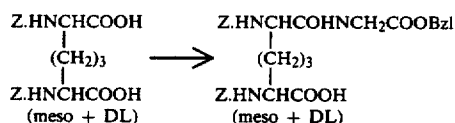
Preparation 14



Triethylamine (0.84 ml) was added to a solution of di-Z-meso-DAP-(D)-GlyOBzl (1)(3.0 g) in dimethylformamide (15 ml) at 0°C and then benzyl bromide (0.72 ml) was added thereto. The mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 7.5 hours and triethylamine (0.42 ml) and benzyl bromide (0.36 ml) were added thereto. The mixture was stirred at ambient temperature overnight and poured into dil. phosphoric acid and then extracted with ethyl acetate (100 ml). The extract was washed successively with dil. phosphoric acid, water, dil. sodium bicarbonate, dil. sodium chloride and saturated sodium chloride, and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give an oil (3.4 g). The oil was chromatographed on silica gel (55 g) and elution was carried out with a mixture of ethyl acetate and methylene chloride (35:65) to give crude crystals. The crude crystals were recrystallized from ethyl acetate to give di-Z-meso-DAP(L)OBzl-(D)-

N.M.R. (CDCl_3), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.1–2.1 (6H, m), 3.98 (2H, d, $J=6$ Hz), 3.8–4.5 (2H, m), 5.04 (4H, s), 5.08 (2H, s), 5.10 (2H, s), 5.49 (2H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 6.64 (1H, t, $J=6$ Hz), 7.28 (20H, s).

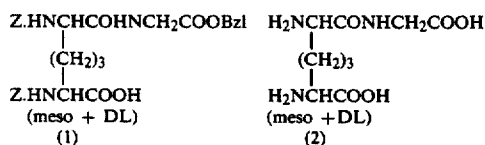
Preparation 15



Di-Z-DAP(OH)₂ (1)(4.58 g) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (50 ml) and N-hydroxysuccinimide (1.15 g) was added to the solution. To the resulting solution was added a mixture of glycine benzyl ester p-toluenesulfonate (3.21 g) and triethylamine (1.4 ml) in tetrahydrofuran. N,N'-Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (2.06 g) was added to the resulting solution under ice-cooling and the solution was stirred at ambient temperature, N,N'-Dicyclohexylurea was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated to dryness. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate and washed successively with dil. hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium chloride, saturated sodium bicarbonate and saturated sodium chloride, in turn. The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated. The concentrate was chromatographed on silica gel (100 g) and eluted with a mixture of chloroform and methanol (10:1). The eluate was concentrated to dryness to give crystals of di-Z-DAP(OH)GlyoBzl (2)(2.67 g).

N.M.R. (CDCl₃), δ(ppm): 0.83–2.0 (6H, m), 3.3–4.5 (4H, m), 4.97 (6H, broad s), 5.0–5.6 (2H, m), 5.8–6.6 (2H, m), 7.18 (15H, m).

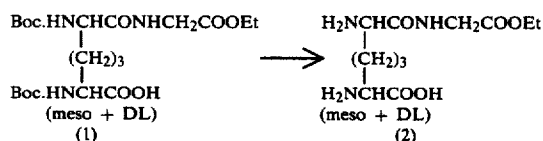
Preparation 16



A solution of di-Z-DAP(OH)GlyoBzl (1)(5.1 g) in methanol (80 ml) was hydrogenated over 5% palladium black (2 g). The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was evaporated to give DAP(OH)GlyOH (2)(1.77 g).

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.3–2.3 (6H, m), 3.73 (1H, t, J=5.5 Hz), 3.80 (2H, s), 4.00 (1H, t, J=6 Hz).

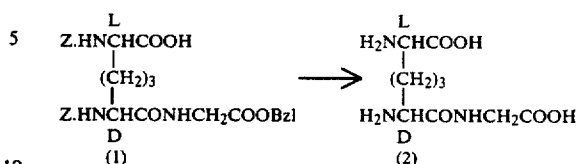
Preparation 17



To a solution of di-Boc-DAP(OC)GlyOEt (1)(6.0 g) in ethyl acetate (10 ml) was added 6 N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (20 ml) under cooling. The mixture was stirred under cooling for four hours to give crystals. The crystals were collected and washed with ethyl acetate to give DAPGLyOEt-di-hydrochloric acid salt monohydrate (2) (4.18 g).

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.30 (3H, t, J=7 Hz), 1.1–2.2 (6H, m), 3.8–4.3 (2H, m), 4.11 (2H, s), 4.26 (2H, q, J=7 Hz).

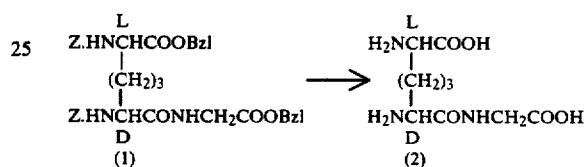
Preparation 18



A mixture of di-Z-meso-DAP(D)-GlyoBzl (1)(60 mg) and 10% palladium black (25 mg) in acetic acid (1 ml) was stirred at ambient temperature under hydrogen atmosphere for 4.5 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered through Celite. The filtrate was evaporated to give meso-DAP(D)GlyOH (2) (39 mg).

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.3–2.3 (6H, m), 3.73 (1H, t, J=5.5 Hz), 3.80 (2H, s), 4.00 (1H, t, J=6 Hz).

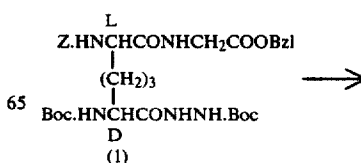
Preparation 19



To a solution of di-Z-meso-DAP(L)oBzl-(D)-(GlyoBzl (1) (6.20 g) in acetic acid (100 ml) was added 10% palladium black (1.73 g) and the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature under hydrogen atmosphere for twenty hours. The reaction mixture was filtered and the catalyst was washed with acetic acid. The filtrate and the washing were combined and concentrated. The concentrate was dissolved in a small amount of water and the solution was evaporated to dryness. This operation was repeated twice. The residue was chromatographed on a macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP20 (150 ml) and elution was carried out with water. The desired fraction was evaporated. The residue was dissolved in a small amount of water and lyophilized to give amorphous solid (2.28 g). A 300 mg portion of this amorphous solid was dissolved in water (3 ml) and the solution warmed to 50° C. and then methanol was added thereto until becoming cloudy. Occasional addition of methanol was required for completion of crystallization. The crystals were collected by filtration to give meso-DAP-(D)GlyOH (2)(270 mg). mp 235° C. (dec).

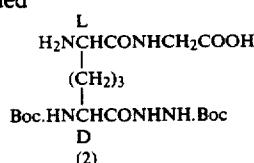
N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.3–2.3 (6H, m), 3.73 (1H, t, J=5.5 Hz), 3.80 (2H, s), 4.00 (1H, t, J=6 Hz), [α]_D²⁰ = –60.6 (C0.507, water)

Preparation 20



75

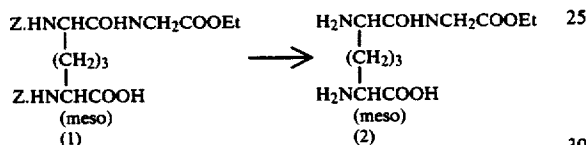
-continued



Z-(L)-Boc(D)-meso-DAP(L)-GlyOBzl-(D)-NHNHBoc (1) (12.0 g) was hydrogenated in a mixture of methanol (100 ml) and acetic acid (2.4 ml) over 10% palladium black (2 g). After completion of the reaction, the catalyst was removed by filtration and the filtrate was evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure. To the residue was added water (30 ml) and the solution was evaporated to dryness. This operation was repeated three times. The residue thus obtained was triturated with ether to give Boc(D)-meso-DAP(L)-GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (2) (7.80 g). mp 130°–138° C. (dec).

N.M.R. (CD_3OD), δ (ppm): 1.60 (9H, s), 1.63 (9H, s), 1.7–2.0 (6H, m), 3.92 (2H, s), 3.8–4.1 (2H, m).

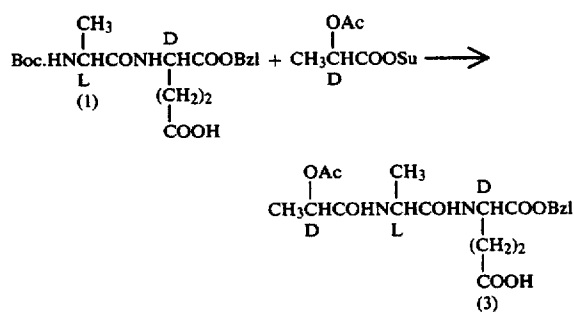
Preparation 21



Di-Zmeso-DAP(OH)GlyOEt (1) (9.33 g) was hydrogenated in acetic acid (80 ml) with 10% palladium black (0.93 g) under conditions of two atmospheric pressure of hydrogen. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated. Ethyl acetate was added to the concentrate to give crystals of magnesium sulfate to give meso-DAPGlyOEt acetic acid salt (2) (5.74 g). mp 188°–189° C. (dec.).

N.M.R. (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.44 (3H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 1.2–2.2 (6H, m), 1.93 (3H, s), 3.76 (1H, t, $J=6$ Hz), 3.9–4.2 (1H, m), 4.10 (2H, s), 4.20 (2H, q, $J=7$ Hz).

Preparation 22



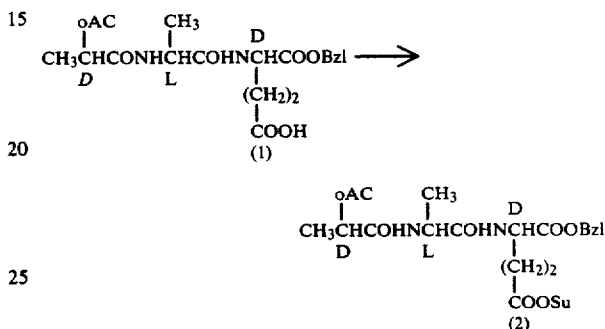
Boc-L-Ala-D-Glu(α -OBzl)(1) (298 mg) and anisole (0.2 ml) were added to trifluoroacetic acid (1 ml) at 0° C. and the mixture was stirred at the same temperature for two hours. Trifluoroacetic acid was evaporated to dryness and the residue was triturated with ether. The resulting compound was dissolved in water (3 ml) and adjusted to pH 7 with triethylamine and additional 0.1 ml of triethylamine was added to the solution. To the resulting solution was added a solution of Lac(oAc)OSu (2) (167 mg) in dimethylformamide (3 ml) at 0° C. The resulting mixture was stirred overnight at ambient temperature

76

and the reaction mixture was acidified with a diluted aqueous hydrochloric acid and then extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water and evaporated to dryness. The residue thus obtained was purified by preparative thin layer chromatography using a pre-coated silica gel plate, developing with a mixture of chloroform and methanol (8:2) to give D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(OH) (α -OBzl) (3) (270 mg).

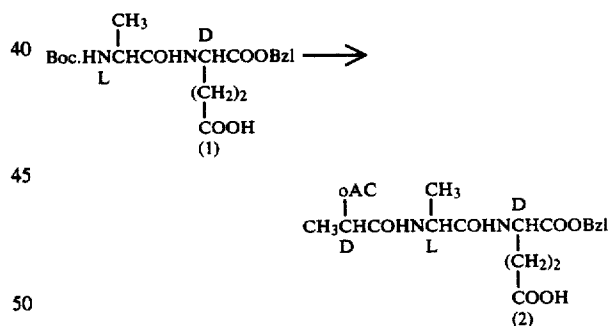
N.M.R. (CD_3OD), δ (ppm): 1.40 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.47 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 2.13 (3H, s), 2.1–2.5 (4H, m), 4.4–5.3 (3H, m), 5.20 (2H, s), 7.40 (5H, s).

Preparation 23



Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (32 mg) was added to a mixture of D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-D-Glu(α -OBzl) (OH) (1) (65 mg) and N-hydroxysuccinimide (18 mg) in dioxane (3 ml) at 0° C. The resulting mixture was stirred overnight at ambient temperature and filtered. The filtrate was evaporated to dryness to give D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-D-Glu(α -OBzl) (oSu) (2) (80 mg).

Preparation 24



Boc-L-Ala-D-Glu(α -OBzl) (OH) (1) (65 g) was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (260 ml) and the solution was stirred for fifteen minutes at ambient temperatures. The solution was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue thus obtained was dissolved in 50% aqueous acetone (600 ml).

O-acetyl-D-lactic chloride (28.8 g) was added dropwise to the solution while stirring under ice-cooling, maintaining the pH 7–8.

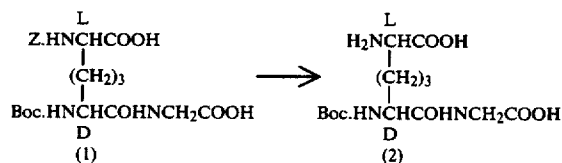
The stirring was continued for an hour at the same temperature and then acetone was evaporated under reduced pressure. The resulting aqueous solution was washed with ethyl acetate (300 ml) and adjusted to pH 2 with 10% aqueous hydrochloric acid.

Extraction was carried out twice with ethyl acetate (600 ml and 300 ml). The ethyl acetate layer was

washed with saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and then evaporated under reduced pressure to give D-Lac-(oAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-oBzl) (OH) (2) (64.7 g).

N.M.R. (CDCl₃), δ(ppm): 1.40 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.47 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 2.13 (3H, s), 2.1-2.5 (4H, m), 4.4-5.3 (3H, m), 5.20 (2H, s), 7.40 (5H, s).

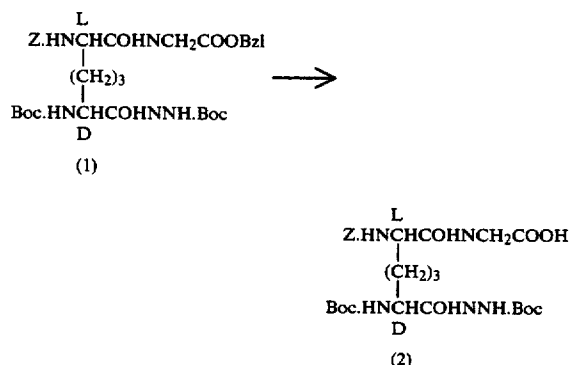
Preparation 25



Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP-(D)GlyOH (1) (2.80 g) was hydrogenated in methanol (56 ml) over 10% palladium black (0.82 g) under conditions of ordinary atmospheric pressure of hydrogen at ambient temperature for four hours. To the reaction mixture was added methanol (50 ml) and the resulting mixture was warmed to 40° C. and then filtered. The catalyst was washed well with methanol and filtered. The filtrate and washings were combined and concentrated to give crystals. The crystals were diluted with isopropanol and cooled in a refrigeration and then washed with ether to give Boc(D)-meso-DAP(D)GlyOH (2) (1.687 g)

N.M.R. (CD₃OD+D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.3-2.2 (6H, m), 1.40 (9H, s), 3.66 (1H, t, J=5 Hz), 3.7-4.2 (1H, m), 3.88 (2H, s) [α]_D²³ = +12.2° (C=0.5, methanol).

Preparation 26

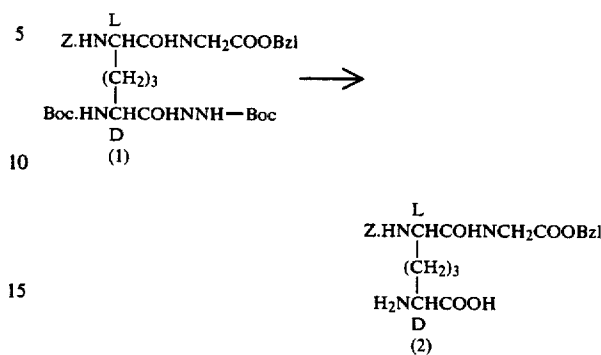


To a solution of Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesaDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyoBzl (1) (105 mg) in methanol was added 0.1N aqueous sodium hydroxide (1.5 ml). The mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for two hours and evaporated. The resulting aqueous solution was acidified to pH 2 with 5% aqueous hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate.

The extract was washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated to give Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)GlyOH (2) (85 mg).

N.M.R. (CDCl₃), δ(ppm): 1.43 (18H, s), 1.3-2.1 (6H, m), 3.9-4.5 (4H, m), 5.10 (2H, s), 6.2-6.4 (4H, m), 7.10 (1H, broad s), 7.33 (5H, s), 8.95 (1H, broad s).

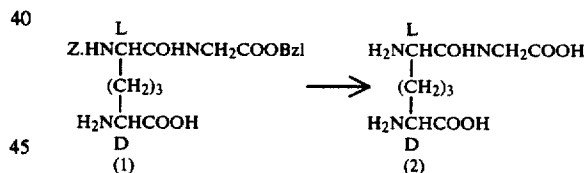
Preparation 27



Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyobZl (1) (2.0 g) was added to trifluoroacetic acid (10 ml) and the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 15 minutes. Trifluoroacetic acid was distilled off and the residue was dissolved in 50% aqueous dioxane (30 ml) and then cooled to 0° C. To this solution was added N-bromosuccinimide (1.04 g) and the mixture was stirred at the same temperature for an hour. Dioxane was distilled off and the residue was adjusted to pH 6 with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The precipitated crystalline solid was filtered and washed with water to give Z-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyoBzl (2) (1.15 g).

N.M.R. (DMSO-d₆), δ(ppm): 1.2-2.0 (6H, m), 3.8-4.2 (4H, m), 5.05 (2H, s), 5.15 (2H, s), 7.40 (10H, s).

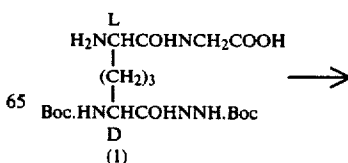
Preparation 28



A solution of Z-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)GlyoBzl (1) (100 mg) in a mixture of methanol (10 ml) and water (3 ml) was hydrogenated over 10% palladium-black (50 mg) under an ordinary atmospheric pressure of hydrogen. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was pulverized to give meso-DAP-(L)GlyOH (2) (44 mg).

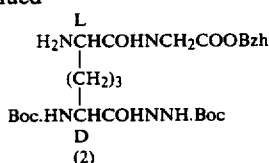
N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.3-2.1 (6H, m), 3.73 (1H, t, J=6 Hz), 3.80 (2H, s), 4.01 (1H, t, J=6 Hz).

Preparation 29



79

-continued



P-Toluenesulfonic acid (monohydrate) (0.56 g) was added to a solution of Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (1) (1.39 g). To the mixture was added a solution of dipenyldiazomethane (0.62 g) in methanol (1 ml). The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 30 minutes.

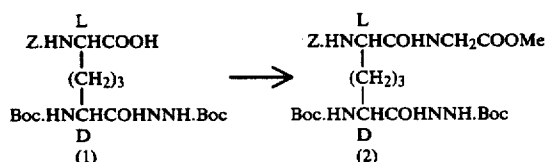
To the reaction mixture was added an additional dipenyldiazomethane (0.78 g) until the starting material (1) was disappeared on thin layer chromatography.

An excess of the reagent was destroyed by adding acetic acid and the mixture was adjusted to pH 8 with saturate aqueous sodium bicarbonate and then evaporated. The residue was dissolved in ether (3 ml) and triturated with n-hexane (5 ml). The solvents were removed by decantation. This operation was further repeated twice. The residue was put on a column of silica gel (30 g) and eluted with a mixture of ethyl acetate and methanol (10:1).

The fractions containing the object compound (2) were combined and evaporated to give a solid, which was purified by reprecipitation from a mixture of ether and n-hexane (1:2) to give Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOBzh (2) (1.22 g).

N.M.R. (CDCl_3), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.33 (18H, s), 1.1–1.8 (6H, m), 3.1–3.5 (1H, m), 3.9–4.3 (3H, m), 5.2–5.5 (1H, m), 6.75 (1H, s), 7.3 (10H, s), 7.6–8.0 (1H, m).

Preparation 30



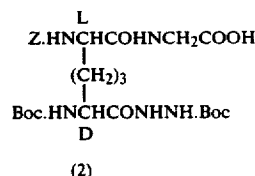
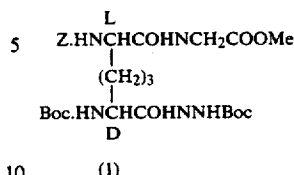
To a mixture of Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc (1) (1.40 g) and glycine methyl ester hydrochloride (392 mg) in dimethyl formamide (10 ml) were added N-hydroxysuccinimide (0.45 g) and dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (0.645 g) at 0° C., and the resulting mixture was stirred at the same temperature for 30 minutes and at ambient temperature for overnight. The resulting precipitate was filtered off and the filtrate was concentrated. The concentrate was dissolved in ethyl acetate (50 ml) and the solution was washed successively with 0.5N hydrochloric acid, water, 2.5% sodium bicarbonate and water.

The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated to give Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-MesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOMe (2) (1.45 g).

N.M.R. (CDCl_3), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.40 (18H, s), 1.5–2.0 (6H, m), 3.70 (3H, s), 3.98 (2H, d, J=6 Hz), 4.0–4.5 (2H, m), 5.07 (2H, s), 5.45 (1H, d, J=8 Hz), 5.93 (1H, d, J=8 Hz), 6.83 (1H, broad s), 7.1–7.3 (1H, m), 7.33 (5H, s), 8.63 (1H, broad s).

80

Preparation 31



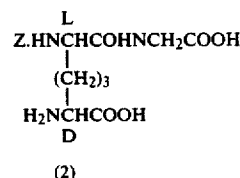
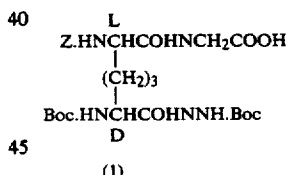
To a solution of Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOMe (1) (1.41 g) in a mixture of water (14 ml) and methanol (10 ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide (2.3 ml) at 0° C.

The mixture was stirred at the same temperature for 30 minutes and at ambient temperature for 3.5 hours. Methanol was distilled off and the resulting solution was washed with ethyl acetate. The aqueous layer was adjusted to pH 3 with 5% hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate.

The extract was washed with a saturated sodium chloride, dried over magnesium sulfate and then evaporated to give Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (2) (1.24 g).

N.M.R. (CDCl_3), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.43 (18H, s), 1.3–2.1 (6H, m), 3.9–4.5 (4H, m), 5.10 (2H, s), 6.2–6.4 (4H, m), 7.10 (1H, broad s), 7.33 (5H, s), 8.95 (1H, broad s).

Preparation 32



Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (1) (270 mg) was added to trifluoroacetic acid (5 ml) and the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 15 minutes.

Trifluoroacetic acid was distilled off and the residue was pulverized with ether. The solvent was removed by decantation and the solid material thus obtained was dissolved in 60% aqueous acetic acid (30 ml) and manganese dioxide (180 mg) was added to the solution. The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for an hour. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was dissolved in water and the solution was evaporated.

The residue was dissolved in 50% ethanol (60 ml) and adjusted to pH 9 with dil. aqueous ammonia and stored in a refrigerator. The solution was treated with an active carbon (30 mg) and filtered. The filtrate was concentrated and the concentrate was dissolved in water (20 ml) and put on a column of carbon (15 ml).

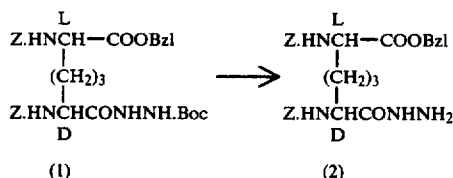
The column was washed with water and eluted with 70% aqueous acetone. The extract was evaporated to give Z-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH (2) (85 mg).

M.p. 210° C. (dec).

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 2600–2400 (shoulder), 1710 (shoulder, 1680, 1640 cm⁻¹.

N.M.R. (DMSO-d₆) δ(ppm) 1.10–2.20 (6H, m), 3.30 (1H, m), 3.65 (2H, d, J=7 Hz), 4.00 (1H, m), 5.00 (2H, s), 7.30 (5H, s).

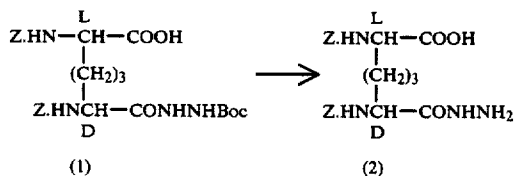
Preparation 33



A solution of di-Z-meso-DAP(L)oBzl-(D)-NHNHBoc (1) (6.68 g) in trifluoroacetic acid (30 ml) was stirred at ambient temperature for twenty minutes. The resulting solution was concentrated and the residue was dissolved in methylenechloride. The solution was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was crystallized from ether to give di-Z-meso-DAP(L)oBzl-(D)-NHNH₂trifluoroacetic acid salt. (2) (6.627 g). mp. 113°–114° C.

N.M.R. (DmSo-d₆)δ(ppm) 1.1–2.0 (6H, m), 3.6–4.3 (2H, m), 5.03 (4H, s), 5.11 (2H, s), 7.33 (15H, s), 7.1–8.4 (6H, m).

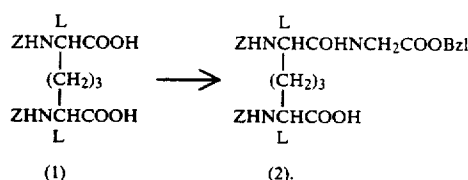
Preparation 34



A mixture of di-Z-meso-DAP(D)-NHNHBoc (1) (6.41 g) and anisole (3 ml) in trifluoroacetic acid (17 ml) was stirred at 0° C. for 1.5 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reducing pressure and ether (50 ml) was added to the concentrate. The ether solution was triturated to give precipitates. The precipitates were washed twice with ether and pumped to give di-Z-meso-DAP(D)NHNH₂trifluoroacetic acid salt.(2) (7.0 g).

N.M.R. (CD₃OD) δ(ppm): 1.2–2.1 (6H, m), 3.9–4.5 (2H, m), 5.05 (4H, s), 7.25 (10H, s).

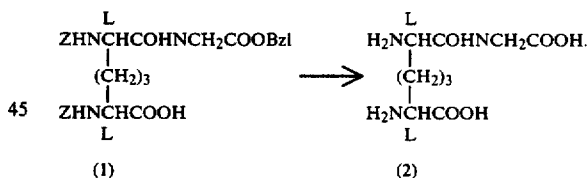
Preparation 35



To a mixture of di-Z-L-DAP (1) (4.59 g) and N-methylmorpholine (2.2 ml) in methylene chloride (50 ml) was added iso-butoxycarbonyl chloride (1.69 ml) at –20° C. and the mixture was stirred at –10° C. ~ –15° C. for 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was cooled to –30° C. and a mixture of H-GlyoBzl p-toluenesulfonate (4.38 g) and N-methylmorpholine (1.43 ml) in methylene chloride (25 ml) was added thereto. The mixture was stirred at –10° C. for an hour and then allowed to warm to ambient temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the concentrate was poured into a mixture of ethyl acetate and dil. hydrochloric acid. Insoluble materials were filtered off and the organic layer was separated and washed successively with dil. sodium bicarbonate, dil. hydrochloric acid, water and brine. During this operation, crystals were separated out which was collected by filtration to give di-Z-L-DAP-mono-GlyoBzl (2) (0.79 g). The filtrate was dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated. The residue was combined with the insoluble materials described above and then recrystallized from ethyl acetate to give additional di-Z-L-DAP-mono-GlyoBzl (2) (2.55 g).

N.M.R. (DmSo-d₆): 1.1–1.9 (6H, m), 3.89 (2H, broad d, J=5 Hz), 3.7–4.4 (2H, m), 5.00 (4H, s), 5.10 (2H, s), 7.1–7.6 (2H, m), 7.32 (15H, s), 8.31 (1H, t, J=5 Hz).

Preparation 36



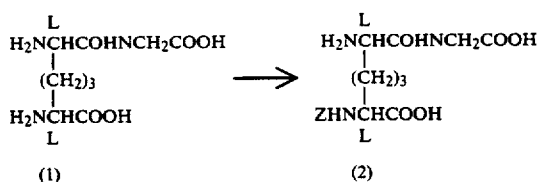
Di-Z-L-DAP-mono-GlyoBzl (1)(3.12 g) was dissolved in a mixture of methanol (10 ml) and acetic acid (60 ml) by warming. To the solution was added 10% palladium black (850 mg) and the mixture was stirred under an atmospheric pressure of hydrogen overnight, during which time a white precipitate was appeared.

The catalyst and the precipitate were collected by filtration and the filter cake was washed with 50% aqueous acetic acid and water. The filtrate and the washings were combined and evaporated. The residue was dissolved in water and the solution was evaporated in order to remove acetic acid. This operation was repeated twice and the residue was triturated with hot water and then methanol was added thereto. The suspension was cooled in a refrigerator and the resulting precipitate was filtered and washed with methanol and ether to give L-DAP-monoGlyOH (2) (1.295 g).

I.R. (Nujol): 1660, 1640 (shoulder), 1590 (broad), 1530 cm⁻¹.

N.M.R. (D₂O) δ (ppm): 1.2–2.3 (6H, m), 3.5–4.3 (2H, m), 3.87 (2H, s).

Preparation 37

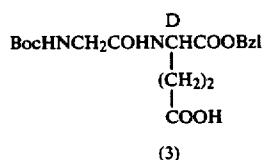
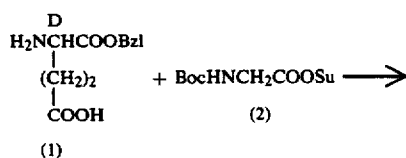


To a mixture of L-DAP-monoGlyOH (1) (1.25 g) and cupric chloride (dihydrate) (1) (0.86 g) in water (120 ml) were added 3N sodium hydroxide (5.5 ml) and carbobenzyloxy chloride (3.6 ml) at 5° C. The mixture was stirred at 5° C. for 4.25 hours, during which time the pH of the reaction mixture was kept at 11–11.5 by adding 3N sodium chloride.

To the reaction mixture was added an additional carbobenzyloxy chloride (1.08 ml) and the resulting mixture was stirred at the same temperature for 6 hours, maintaining pH 11–11.5 with 3N sodium hydroxide. Another portion of carbobenzyloxy chloride (1.08 ml) was added to the reaction mixture and the resulting mixture was stirred at 5° C. for 2.5 hours, keeping the pH at 11–11.5. The reaction mixture was acidified to pH 2 with dil. hydrochloric acid and washed twice with ether. The aqueous layer was adjusted to pH 4.5 with dil. sodium hydrochloride and then hydrogen sulfide gas was bubbled at 5° C. The resulting precipitate was filtered off and the filtrate was concentrated to 50 ml. The concentrate was adjusted to pH 2 and chromatographed on a column of a macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP 20 (70 ml). Fractions eluted with 50% aqueous methanol were collected and evaporated. The residue was triturated with ether containing a small amount of methanol to give Z-(α)-L-DAP-(ϵ)-GlyOH (2) (1.30 g).

N.M.R. (D₂O) δ (ppm): 1.2–2.22 (6H, m), 3.88 (2H, d, J=2.5 Hz), 3.8–4.3 (2H, m), 5.10 (2H, s), 7.43 (5H, s).

Preparation 38 (1) Step 1

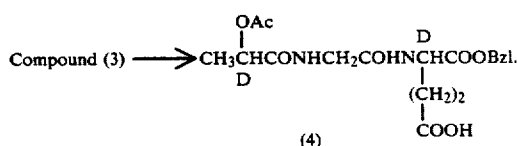


D-Glu(α -oBzl) (1) (4.74 g) was dissolved in a mixture of dioxane (60 ml) and water (60 ml) containing triethylamine (2.02 g). To this solution was added Boc-Gly-N-Su (2) (5.16 g), and the mixture was allowed to stand overnight at ambient temperature. The resulting reaction mixture was evaporated to give an oily residue which was dissolved in ethyl acetate and then washed with water. The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated to give oily residue (5.40 g). Analytical sample of the compound (3) was purified

as dicyclohexylamine salt which was recrystallized from ethyl acetate-diisopropyl ether to give dicyclohexylamine salt of Boc-Gly-D-Glu(α -oBzl). mp. 127°–129° C.

N.M.R. (CDCl₃) δ (ppm): 1.40 (9H, s), 0.84–2.40 (24H, m), 2.92 (2H, m), 3.80 (2H, d, J=7 Hz), 4.08 (1H, q, J=7 Hz), 4.48 (1H, m), 5.12 (2H, s), 5.64 (1H, m), 7.32 (5H, s), 8.54 (1H, d, J=7 Hz), 9.18 (1H, s).

(2) Step 2



Boc-Gly-D-Glu(α -oBzl) (3) (4.30 g) was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (20 ml) and the solution was kept at ambient temperature for 30 minutes. Evaporation of the solvent under reduced pressure gave an oily residue, to which toluene was added and evaporated in vacuo. The resulting oily residue was dissolved in 50% aqueous acetone (20 ml) and the solution was adjusted to pH 7.0–8.0 by adding saturated sodium bicarbonate solution. To this stirred solution cooled in an ice-bath, was added dropwise acetyl-D-lactyl chloride (1.97 g) and the mixture was stirred at the same temperature for an hour. The reaction mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and the aqueous layer was treated with conc. hydrochloric acid to adjust the pH to 3.0. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate and the organic layer was washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated to give an oily residue (2.8 g). The residue was purified as dicyclohexylamine salt which was recrystallized from ethyl acetate-diisopropyl ether to give D-Lac(oAc)-Gly-D-Glu(α -oBzl) (4) (2.1 g), mp 117°–118° C.

N.M.R. (CDCl₃) δ (ppm): 0.80–2.52 (24H, m), 1.48 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 2.14 (3H, s), 2.96 (2H, m), 3.96 (2H, d, J=7 Hz), 4.46 (1H, q, J=7 Hz), 5.16 (2H, s), 5.20 (1H, q, J=7 Hz), 7.32 (5H, s), 8.92–9.28 (3H, m).

The following compounds were prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Steps 1 and 2 of Preparation 38.

Preparation 39

(1) Step 1

Dicyclohexylamine salt of Boc-L-Val-D-Glu(α -oBzl) mp. 130° C.

N.M.R. (CDCl₃) δ (ppm): 0.91 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 0.94 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.0–2.60 (25H, m), 2.96 (2H, m), 4.00 (1H, m), 4.44 (1H, m), 5.14 (2H, s), 5.36 (1H, m), 7.24 (1H, m), 7.32 (5H, s), 8.54 (1H), 9.38 (1H, s).

(2) Step 2

Dicyclohexylamine salt of D-Lac(oAc)-L-Val-D-Glu(α -oBzl) mp. 121°–122° C.

N.M.R. (CDCl₃) δ (ppm): 0.91 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 0.91 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.00–2.60 (25H, m), 1.46 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 2.14 (3H, s), 3.00 (2H, m), 4.28–4.60 (2H, m), 5.16 (2H, s), 5.20–7.00 (1H, d, J=7 Hz), 7.32 (5H, s), 9.04 (1H, d, J=7 Hz), 9.28 (1H, s).

Preparation 40

(1) Step 1

Boc-L-Ser(oBzl)-D-Glu(α-oBzl). mp 84°–85° C.

N.M.R. (CDCl₃), δ(ppm): 1.44 (9H, s), 1.76–2.48 (4H, m), 3.60, 3.65 (2H, doublet of AB quartet, J=4 Hz, 7 Hz), 4.36 (1H), 4.52 (2H, s), 4.68 (1H), 5.16 (2H, s), 5.56 (1H), 7.28 (5H, s), 7.32 (5H, s), 7.04–7.40 (1H, m), 9.62 (1H, broad s).

(2) Step 2

Dicyclohexylamine salt of D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ser(oBzl)-D-Glu(α-oBzl). mp. 124°–125° C.

N.M.R. (CDCl₃), δ(ppm): 1.00–2.40 (24H, m), 1.46 15 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 2.12 (3H, s), 2.92 (2H, m), 3.62, 3.88 (2H, doublet of AB quartet, J=4 Hz, 10 Hz), 4.40–4.72 (2H, m), 4.52 (2H, s), 5.16 (2H, s), 5.17 (1H, q, J=7 Hz), 7.12 (1H, d, J=7 Hz), 7.28 (5H, s), 7.32 (5H, s), 8.44 (1H, d, J=7 Hz), 8.56 (1H, broad s).

Preparation 41

(1) Step 1

Boc-L-Phe-D-Glu(α-oBzl). mp 131° C.

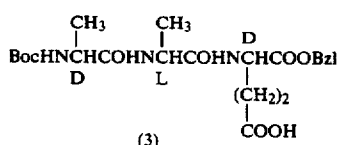
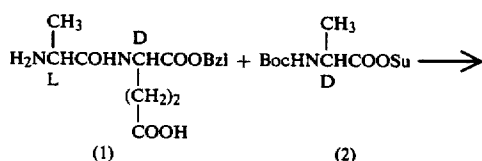
N.M.R. (DMSO-d₆), δ(ppm): 1.30 (9H, s), 1.60–2.33 (4H, m), 2.67–3.0 (2H, m), 3.90–4.66 (2H, m), 5.13 (2H, s), 7.21 (5H, s), 7.33 (5H, s), 8.30 (1H, d, J=7 Hz).

(2) Step 2

D-Lac(oAc)-L-Phe-D-Glu(α-oBzl). mp 148°–150° C. (dec.).

N.M.R. (DMSO-d₆), δ(ppm): 1.13 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 2.00 (3H, s), 1.80–2.40 (4H, m), 2.67–3.30 (2H, m), 4.20–4.83 (2H, m), 4.91 (1H, q, 7 Hz), 5.17 (2H, s), 7.23 35 (5H, s), 7.36 (5H, s), 8.25 (2H, t, J=7 Hz).

Preparation 42

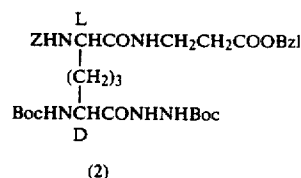
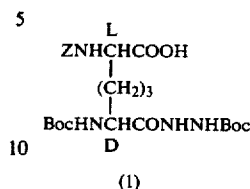


To a solution of L-Ala-D-Glu(α-oBzl) (1) hydrochloric acid salt (5.40 g) in 50% aqueous dioxane (100 ml) were added triethylamine (3.16 g) and Boc-D-AlaSu (4.48 g), and the mixture was stirred overnight at ambient temperature. After evaporation of dioxane, the aqueous layer was acidified to pH 1 with dil hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated. The residue was crystallized from a mixture of ethyl acetate and ether and filtered to give Boc-D-Ala-L-Ala-D-Glu(α-oBzl) (3) (6.90 g).

N.M.R. (acetone-d₆), δ(ppm): 1.32 (6H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.40 (9H, s), 2.09–2.54 (4H, m) 3.88–4.72 (3H, m), 5.15 (2H, s), 6.17 (1H, d, J=7 Hz), 7.37 (5H, s), 7.34–7.67 (2H, m).

Preparation 43

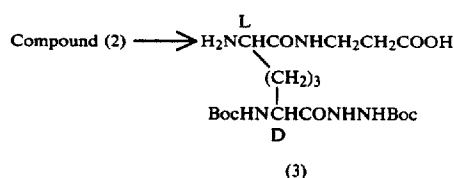
(1) Step 1



To a solution of Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP (D)-NHNHBoc (2) (1.50 g.) and N-methylmorpholine (0.32 ml.) in methylenechloride (15 ml.) was added isobutyl chlorocarbonate (0.375 ml.) at –25° C. After stirring at –15° C. for 30 minutes, the solution was cooled to –45° C. To the resulting solution was added a solution of B-AlaOBzl, P-toluenesulfonate (1.075 g.) and N-methylmorpholine (0.34 ml.) in methylenechloridedimethylformamide (10 ml. – 1 ml.). The reaction mixture was stirred at –15° C. – 10° C. for an hour, allowed to warm to ambient temperature and then concentrated. The concentrate was taken up into ethyl acetate (600 ml.) and washed in turn with dil hydrochloric acid, water (×2), dil sodiumbicarbonate, water and brine. The concentrate was dried over magnesium sulfate and the solvent was distilled off to give Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso DAP-(L)-β-AlaOBzl-(D)-NHNHBoc (2) (2.00 g.).

N.M.R. (DMSO-d₆), δ(ppm): 1.1–1.9 (6H, m), 3.1–3.5 (2H, m), 3.7–4.1 (2H, m), (2H, m), 4.98 (2H, s), 5.06 (2H, s), 6.5–6.8 (1H, m), 7.3 (1H, m), 7.3 (1H, m), 7.95 (1H, m), 8.66 (1H, broad s), 9.53 (1H, broad s).

(2) Step 2



A suspension of 10% of palladium-carbon (0.50 g.) in water (5 ml.) was added to a solution of compound (2) (1.95 g) in methanol (40 ml.). The mixture was stirred under hydrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated. Water was coevaporated with ethanol to give an amorphous solid. Trituration with ether and filtration gave Boc (D) meso-DAP-(L)-β-AlaOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (3) (1.25 g.).

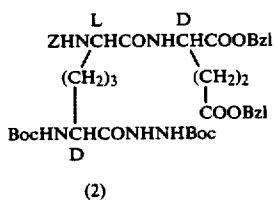
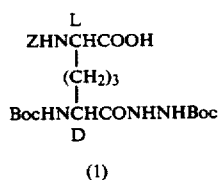
N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.0–2.2 (6H, m), 1.45 (18H, s), 2.41 (2H, t, J=7 Hz), 3.47 (2H, t, J=Hz), 3.7–4.2 (2H, m.).

The following compounds were prepared in substantially the same manner as steps 1 and 2 of Preparation 43.

87

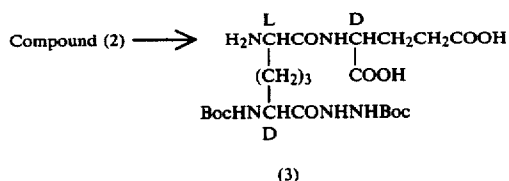
Preparation 44

(2) Step 1



N.M.R. (DMSO- d_6), δ (ppm): 1.1–2.5 (10H, m), 1.35 (18H, s), 3.5–4.6 (3H, m), 4.97 (2H, s), 5.01 (2H, s), 5.07 (2H, s), 6.6–6.8 (1H, m), 7.30 (15H, s), 7.7–8.8 (2H, m).

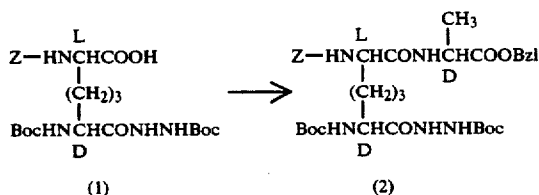
(2) Step 2



N.M.R. (D_2O), δ (ppm): 0.6–2.6 (28H, m), 3.5–4.4 (3H, m).

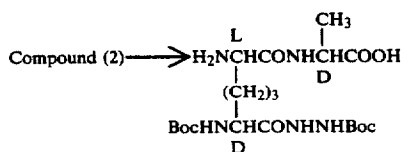
Preparation 45

(1) Step 1



N.M.R. (DMSO- d_6), δ (ppm): 1.33 (18H, s), 1.25–2.00 (9H, m), 3.66–4.50 (3H, m), 5.02 (2H, s), 5.11 (2H, s), 7.33 (10H, s).

(2) Step 2

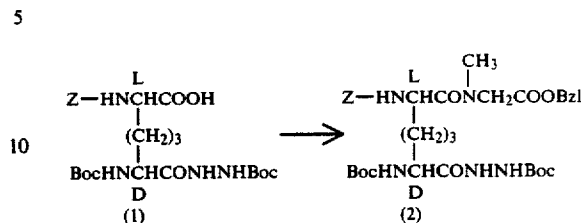


N.M.R. (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.50 (18H, s), 1.15–2.15 (9H, m), 3.83–4.33 (3H, m).

88

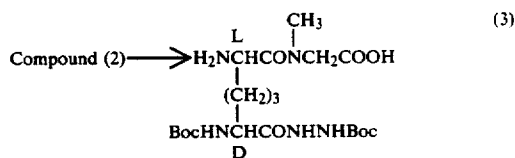
Preparation 46

(1) Step 1



I.R. (Nujol): 3270, 1695 (broad), 1640 cm^{-1} .

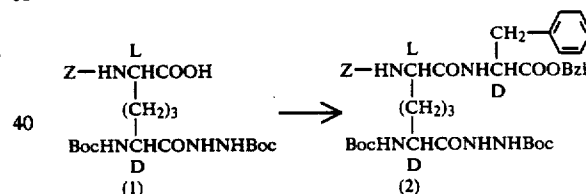
(2) Step 2



N.M.R. (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.2–2.2 (6H, m), 1.14 (18H, s), 2.93 and 3.10 (3H, a pair of singlets), 3.5–4.5 (4H, m).

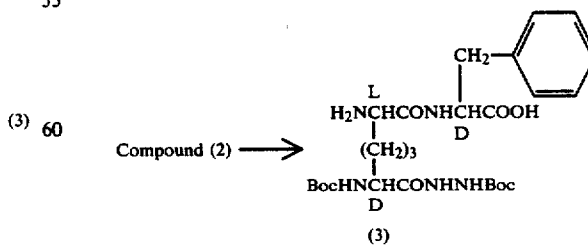
Preparation 47

(1) Step 1



N.M.R. (DMSO), δ (ppm): 1.0–1.9 (6H, m), 1.37 (18H, s), 2.8–3.2 (2H, m), 3.5–4.3 (2H, m), 4.3–4.8 (1H, m), 4.99 (2H, s), 5.08 (2H, s), 6.4–6.8 (1H, m), 7.1 (1H, m), 7.15 (5H, s), 7.28 (10H, m), 8.28 (1H, broad d, $J = 7$ Hz), 8.4–8.8 (1H, m), 9.50 (1H, broad s).

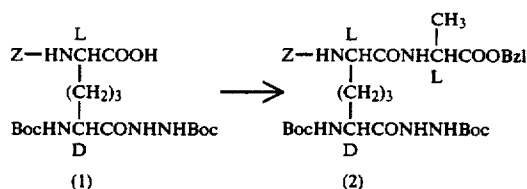
(2) Step 2



N.M.R. (D_2O), δ (ppm): 0.8–2.0 (6H, m), 1.53 (18H, s), 2.5–4.2 (5H, m), 7.41 (5H, s).

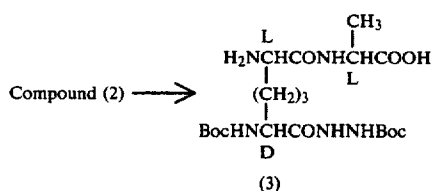
Preparation 48

(1) Step 1



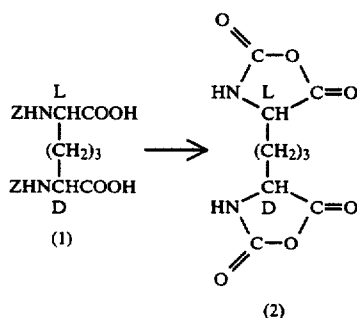
N.M.R. (DMSO- d_6), (ppm): 1.0-2.0 (9H, m) 1.42 (18H, s), 3.7-4.7 (3H, m), 5.05 (2H, s), 5.15 (2H, s), 6.6-7.0 (1H, s), 7.1-7.8 (1H, m), 7.38 (10H, s), 8.40 (1H, broad s, J=7Hz), 8.5-8.9 (1H, m), 9.65 (1H, broad s).

(2) Step 2



N.M.R. ($\text{CD}_3\text{OD}-\text{D}_2\text{O}$), δ (ppm): 1.38 (3H, d, J=7Hz), 1.44 (9H, s), 1.46 (9H, s), 1.1-2.2 (6H, m), 3.8-4.3 (3H, m)

Preparation 49

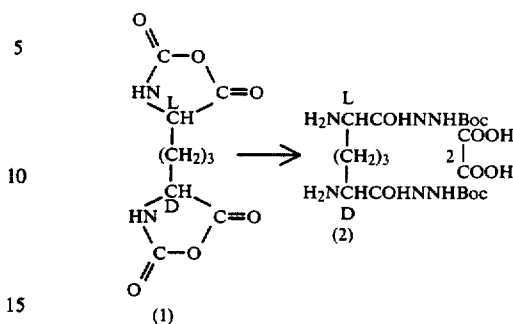


To a cooled solution of di-Z-mesoDAP (1) (3.50 g.) in methylene chloride (70 ml.) was added phosphorus pentachloride (3.50 g.) at 0° C., and the mixture was stirred at the same temperature for 15 minutes. The temperature was raised to ambient temperature and then the mixture was stirred for 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was then warmed to 50° C. and stirred for 20 minutes. After standing for 20 minutes at 0° C., the resulting crystalline solid was filtered and washed with methylene chloride to give mesoDAP-N-carboxylic anhydride (2) (1.68 g).

I.R. (Nujol): 3250, 1840, 1765 cm^{-1}

N.M.R. (DMSO- d_6), δ (ppm): 1.2-2.0 (6H, m), 4.43 (2H, t, J=5 Hz), 9.06 (2H, s).

Preparation 50

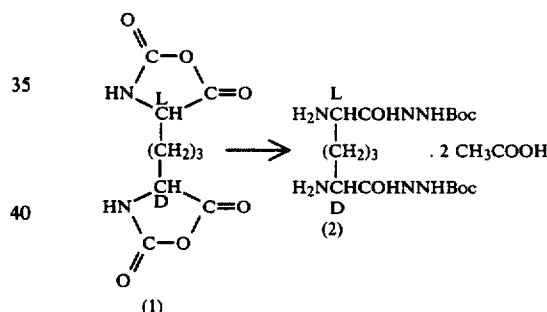


To a cooled mixture of t-butylcarbazate (1.58 g.) and oxalic acid hydrate (1.26 g.) in methanol (7 ml.) was added a solution of mesoDAP N-carboxylic anhydride (1.23 g.) in methyl cyanide (7 ml.). After stirring at 0° C. for 10 minutes, methyl cyanide (7 ml.) was added to the solution and the mixture was stirred at the same temperature for 30 minutes. The resulting crystalline solid was filtered and washed with methyl cyanide to give mesoDAP-di NHNHBoc oxalate (2) (2.66 g.).

I.R. (Nujol): 3600-2200, 1720, 1680, 1610 cm^{-1}

N.M.R. (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.47 (18H, s), 1.3-2.3 (6H, m), 4.10 (2H, t, J=6 Hz).

Preparation 51

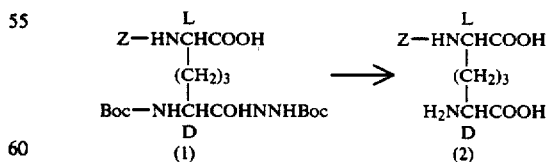


MesoDAP di-NHNH Boc acetate (2) was prepared from mesoDAP N-carboxylic anhydride (1) in substantially the same manner as that of Preparation 50.

N.M.R. (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.52 (18H, s), 1.95 (6H, s), 1.4-2.3 (6H, m), 4.08 (2H, t, J=7 Hz).

Preparation 52

(1) Step 1



Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc (1) (2.26 g) was added to trifluoroacetic acid (6 ml) and stirred for 15 minutes at room temperature. After evaporation of trifluoroacetic acid, the resulting oily residue was dissolved in 0.1N sulfuric acid (42 ml) and cooled in an icebath. To this solution was added a solution of sodium periodate (1.078 g) in water (15 ml) and the mixture was

91

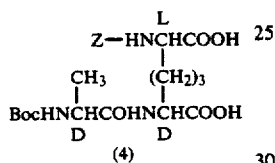
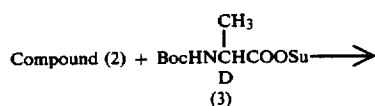
stirred for 1 hour at the same temperature. The reaction mixture was treated with an aqueous solution of sodium bisulfite until the dark color was clear. After adjusting the pH of the solution to 7.0, the solution was concentrated to about 10 ml and the pH was adjusted to 2.0. This solution was applied to a column of a macroporous nonionic adsorption resin, HP-20 (100 ml), which was eluted with water and then with water-methanol (3:2). Evaporation of the latter fractions gave Z-(L)-mesoDAP (2) (1.0 g) as a white crystalline residue.

m.p. ~245° C. (dec.).

I.R. (Nujol): 3500, 3350, 3200, 2600 (broad), 1690 cm^{-1} .

N.M.R. ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$): $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.16–2.0 (6 H, m), 3.30 (1 H, broad signal), 3.90 (1 H, broad signal), 5.00 (2 H, s), 7.33 (5 H, s).

(2) Step 2

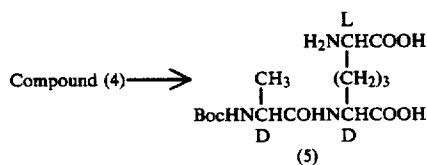
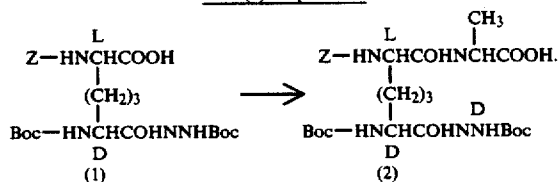


To a mixture of Z-(L)-mesoDAP (2) (1.50 g) and triethylamine (1.0 g) in aqueous dioxane (dioxane 30 ml and water 20 ml) was added Boc-D-Ala-OSu (3) (1.32 g) and the mixture was allowed to stand overnight at room temperature. Dioxane was evaporated, and the resulting aqueous solution was acidified with diluted hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated to give Boc-D-Ala-(D)-Z-(L)-mesoDAP (4) (1.90 g) as a white foam.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1700 (broad) cm^{-1} .

N.M.R. ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$): $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 120–2.0 (18H, m), 3.70–4.40 (3H, m), 5.00 (2H, s), 7.37 (5H, s).

(3) Step 3

Preparation 53
(1) Step 1

To a suspension of D-alanine (2.89 g) in a mixture of methylene chloride (30 ml) and dimethylformamide (12 ml) was added bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (30 ml) and the mixture was stirred for 15 hours at room temperature to give a clear solution. To a solution of the mixed

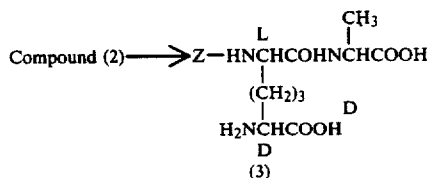
92

anhydride of Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc (1) (13.45 g) in methylene chloride (140 ml), prepared by adding N-methylmorpholine (3.03 g) and isobutyl chloroformate (4.10 g) at -15° and stirring the mixture for 40 minutes at the same temperature, was added in one portion the above solution of D-alanine trimethylsilyl ester at -40° C. Then the reaction mixture was allowed to warm up to 0° C. and stirred for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was evaporated and the residue was dissolved in water, acidified with diluted hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated to give a white powder (12.25 g) of Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH (2).

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 2600–2400 (broad), 1720–1640 (broad) cm^{-1} .

NMR ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$): $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.20–2.00 (27H, m), 3.70–4.40 (3H, m), 5.00 (2H, s), 7.365H, s).

(2) Step 2



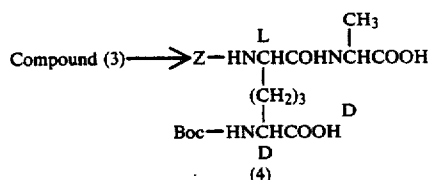
Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH (2) (14.60 g) was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (20 ml) and stirred for 15 minutes at room temperature. Trifluoroacetic acid was removed by evaporation and the residual oil was dissolved in a mixture of 1N sulfuric acid (25 ml) and water (30 ml). The resulting solution was treated with a solution of sodium periodate (5.60 g) in water (20 ml) under cooling in an ice-bath and kept for 1 hour at the same temperature. The reaction mixture was then treated with an aqueous sodium bisulfite solution until the color of the solution became clear. This solution was applied to a column of HP-20, an macroporus non-ionic adsorption resin (300 ml), which was eluted successively with water and methanol-water (1:2). Evaporation of the latter fractions gave a crystalline residue (6.80 g) of Z-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-AlaOH (3).

m.p. ~150° C. (dec)

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 2600–2400 (broad), 1720 (shoulder), 1700, 1649 cm^{-1} .

NMR ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$): $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.30 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.10–2.30 (6H, m), 3.43 (1H, broad s), 3.80–4.5 (2H, m), 5.10 (2H, s), 7.40 (5H, s).

(3) Step 3



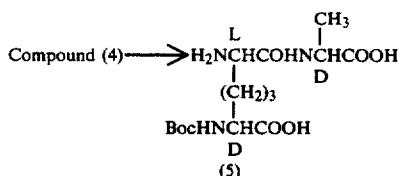
To a mixture of Z-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH (3) (5.70 g) and triethylamine (4.50 g) in water (50 ml) was added a solution 2-t-butoxycarbonyloxyimino-2-phenylacetonitrile (3.55 g) in aceton (50 ml) and the

mixture was stirred for 1 hours at room temperature. After standing overnight at the same temperature, the reaction mixture was concentrated and the resulting aqueous layer was acidified with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated to give a white foam (6.0 g) of Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH (4).

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 2600-2400, 1720-1620 (broad) cm^{-1}

NMR (DMSO- d_6), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.30-2.0 (18H, m), 3.70-4.3 (3H, m), 5.10 (2H, s), 7.40 (5H, s).

Step 4



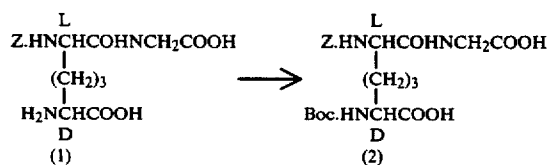
Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH (4) (5.80 g) was dissolved in acetic acid (60 ml) and hydrogenated over 10% palladium-charcoal (0.50 g). The catalyst was removed by filtration and the filtrate was evaporated to give an oily residue, which was dissolved in water (30 ml) and applied to a column of HP-20 (150 ml), a macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin. The column was eluted successively with water and methanol-water (3:7). The latter fractions were combined and evaporated to give a white powder (3.80 g) of Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-AlaOH (5).

I.R. (Nujol): 3250, 2600-2400 (broad), 1720 (shoulder), 1670 cm^{-1} .

NMR (D $_2$ O), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.20-2.20 (18H, m), 4.00 (2H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 4.30 (1H, q, $J=7$ Hz).

Preparation 54

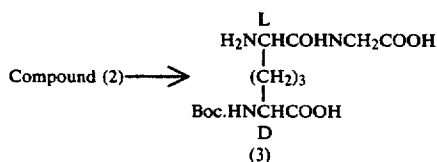
(1) Step 1



Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-HNHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH(2) was prepared from Z-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH (1) in substantially the same manner as preparation 5-1.

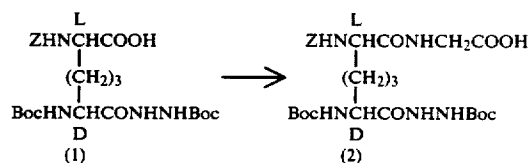
N.M.R. (DMSO- d_6), (ppm): 1.30-2.30 (15H, m), 3.80 (2H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 3.80-4.3 (2H, m), 5.05 (2H, s), 7.40 (5H, s).

(2) Step 2



Preparation 55

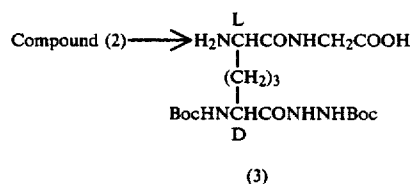
(1) Step 1



To a solution of Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc (1) (5.72 g) and N-methylmorpholine (1.18 g) in methylene chloride (60 ml) was added isobutylchloroformate (1.60 g) at -10° to -15° C., and the mixture was stirred at the same temperature for an hour. To the reaction mixture was added a solution of glycine trimethylsilyl ester (0.96 g) was added and stirred for 1.5 hours at -10° to -15° C. Methylene chloride was removed in vacuo, and the residue was dissolved in a mixture of ethyl acetate (60 ml) and 2.5% hydrochloric acid (50 ml) and water (50 ml) and dried over magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed in vacuo and the residue was triturated successively with ethyl acetate (10 ml) and isopropylether (120 ml) and the precipitate was filtered and washed with isopropylether to give Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (2) (6.1 g).

NMR (CDCl_3), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.43 (18H, s), 1.3-2.1 (6H, m), 3.9-4.5 (4H, m), 5.10 (2H, s), 6.2-6.4 (4H, m), 7.10 (1H, broad s), 7.33 (5H, s), 8.95 (1H, broad s).

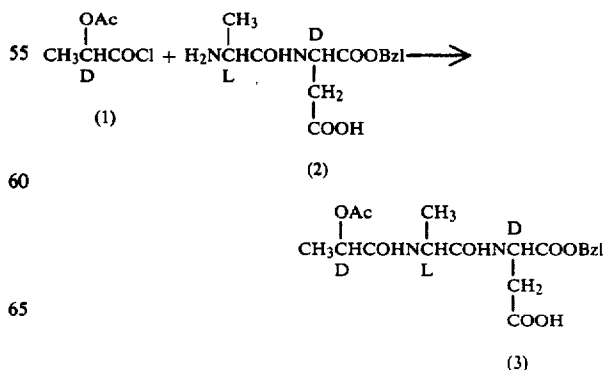
(2) Step 2



Boc(D)-mesoDAP(L)GlyOH-NHNHBoc (3) was obtained in substantially the same manner as that of Preparation 20.

NMR (CD_3OD), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.60 (9H, s), 1.63 (9H, s), 1.7-2.0 (6H, m), 3.92 (2H, s), 3.8-4.1 (2H, m).

Preparation 56

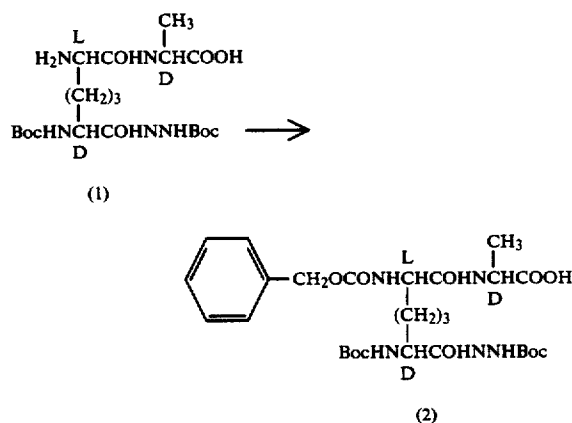


D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-D-Asp(OH)OBzl (3) was prepared from L-Ala-D-Asp(OH)OBzl (2) and acetyl-D-lactyl chloride (1) in substantially the same manner as that of Preparation 22. m.p. 109°–111° C. (dec.).

I.R. (Nujol): 3400, 3300, 1740, 1720, 1670 1550, 1520 cm^{-1} .

NMR (CDCl_3), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.36 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.45 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 2.15 (3H, s), 3.00 (2H, m), 4.4–5.4 (3H, m), 5.20 (2H, s), 7.16 (1H, d, $J=8$ Hz), 7.33 (5H, s), 7.60 (2H, d, $J=8$ Hz), 8.56 (1H, s).

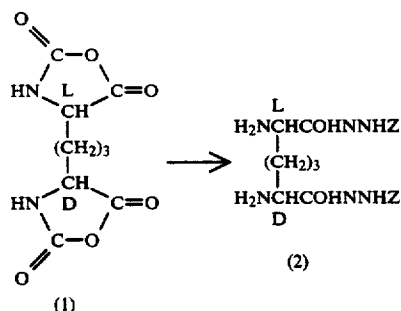
Preparation 57



Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-Ala (1) (14.60 g) was dissolved in a mixture of acetone (60 ml) and water (60 ml). The pH of the solution was adjusted to about 8.0 with sodiumbicarbonate. The solution was stirred and cooled, and carbobenzyloxy chloride (5.30 g) was added thereto. The mixture was reacted for an hour at the same temperature. Removal of acetone under reduced pressure gave an aqueous layer which was acidified with 1 N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated to give Z-(L)-Boc-(D)-MesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-Ala (2) (14.60 g).

NMR ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.0–2.0 (27H, m), 3.70–4.50 (3H, m), 5.03 (2H, s), 6.70 (1H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 7.20 (1H, broad), 7.33 (5H, s), 8.10 (1H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 8.63 (1H, s), 9.63 (1H, s).

Preparation 58



A solution of mesoDAP N-carboxyanhydride (1) (17.0 g) in acetonitrile (130 ml) was cooled to 10° C. and a solution of cabobenzyloxyhydrazine (24.0) in acetic acid (80 ml) was added. The mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at the same temperature. After concentration of

the reaction mixture, the resulting residue was pulverized with ether to give mesoDAP-di-NHNHZ.2ACOH (2) (40.3 g).

m.p. 65°–70° C.

I.R. (Nujol): 3600–2200, 1700 cm^{-1} .

NMR (CD_3OD) δ 1.5–1.9 (6H, m), 1.92 (6H, s), 3.70 (2H, t, $J=5$ Hz), 5.13 (4H, s), 7.38 (10H, s).

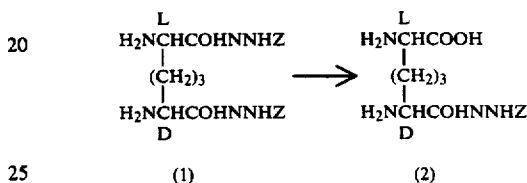
Acetic acid salt of mesoDAP-di-NHNHZ was dissolved in water and neutralized with 1N sodium hydroxide and then the resulting oil was crystallized from water to give mesoDAP-di-NHNHZ.

m.p. 93°–95° C.

I.R. (Nujol): 3260, 1750, 1720, 1660 cm^{-1} .

NMR (CD_3OD), δ 1.5–1.8 (6H, m), 3.30 (2H, m), 5.13 (4H, s), 7.35 (10H, s).

Preparation 59



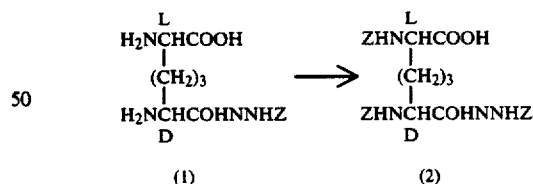
A solution of mesoDAP-di-NHNHZ (1) (40.2) in a mixture of water (1.2 l) and (0.6 l) was adjusted to pH 8.5 with 1N sodium hydroxide. To this solution was added leucine amino peptidase (from hog kidney) (Boehringer Mannheim GmbH) (20 mg) and the mixture was shaken for 6 hours at 37° C. After evaporation of methanol, the resulting aqueous layer was washed with ethyl acetate and concentrated to about 200 ml. The concentrate was applied to a column of HP-20 resin (800 ml). The column was washed with water and eluted with 50% aqueous methanol. The eluate was evaporated and the residue was pulverized with ether to give msoDAP-(D)-NHNHZ (2) (15.0 g).

m.p. 205°–209° C. (dec).

I.R. (Nujol): 3600–2200, 1720, 1640, 1580 cm^{-1} .

NMR (CD_3OD), δ 1.4–2.1 (6H, m), 3.50 (2H, m), 5.17 (2H, s), 7.40 (5H, s).

Preparation 60

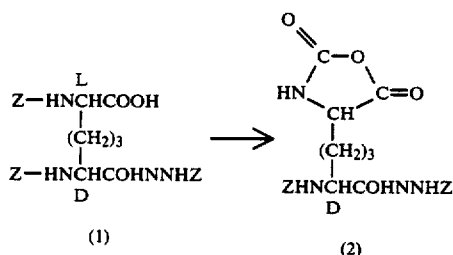


To a suspension of mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHZ (1.40 g) in methylene chloride (30 ml) was added bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (6 ml) and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour at room temperature. The resulting solution was cooled to –15° C. and carbobenzyloxy chloride (2.00 g) was added.

After stirring for 1 hour at the same temperature, the mixture was poured into a mixture of ethyl acetate (100 ml) and 2.5% hydrochloric acid (50 ml). The organic layer was separated, washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride, dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated. The residue was crystallized from chloroform to give di-Z-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHZ (2) (2.20 g)

m.p. 139°–141° C.
 I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1740, 1720, 1695, 1600 cm^{-1} .
 NMR (DC_3OD), δ : 1.40–2.0 (6H, m), 4.10 (2H, m),
 5.10 (6H, s), 7.33 (15H, s).

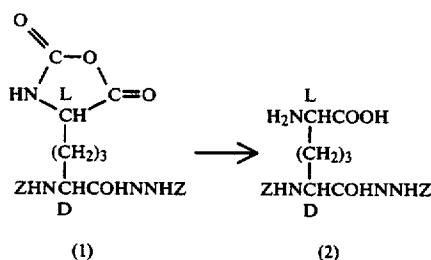
Preparation 61



di-Z-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHZ (1) (0.40 g) was added to thionyl chloride (4 ml) and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at room temperature. Evaporation gave Z-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHZ-(L)-N-carboxyanhydride (2) as an oil.

I.R. (CH_2Cl_2): 3400, 3270, 1850, 1780, 1700 cm^{-1} .

Preparation 62



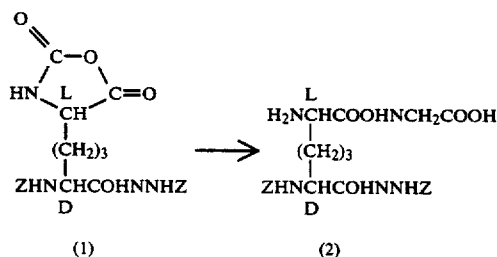
Z-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHZ-(L)-N-carboxyanhydride (1), prepared from 0.40 g of di-Z-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHZ as described above in Preparation 60, was dissolved in a mixture of acetic acid (4 ml) and 1N hydrochloric acid (2 ml) and the mixture was stirred for 6 hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was dissolved in water (3 ml) and neutralized with dilute aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The precipitated crystalline solid was filtered and washed with water to give Z-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHZ (2) (0.25 g).

m.p. 205°–209° (dec).

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1715, 1690, 1665, 1605 cm^{-1} .

NMR ($\text{CF}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$), δ : 1.6–2.5 (6H, m), 4.43 (2H, m), 5.20 (2H, s), 5.25 (2H, s), 7.38 (10H, s).

Preparation 63



A mixture of glycine (80 mg) and sodium carbonate (200 mg) in a mixture of 1N sodium hydroxide (1 ml)

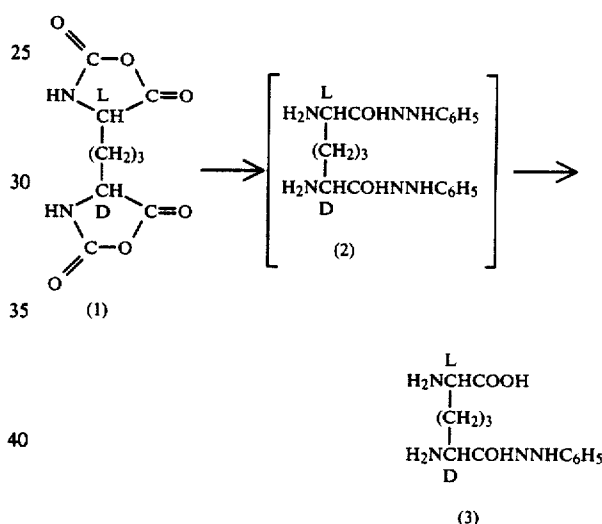
and water (5 ml) was cooled to -5°C . and a solution of Z-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHZ-(L)-N-carboxyanhydride, prepared from di-Z-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHZ (1) (602 mg), in acetonitrile (5 ml) was added. The mixture was stirred for 2 hours at the same temperature and overnight at room temperature. The aqueous layer was separated and the organic layer was extracted with 2% aqueous sodium chloride (5 ml). The aqueous layers were combined and neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid. The precipitated crystalline solid was filtered and washed with water to give Z-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHZ-(L)-GlyOH (2) (120 mg).

m.p. 204°–7° C. (dec).

I.R. (Nujol): 3600–2200, 3250, 1720, 1700, 1690, 1660 cm^{-1} .

NMR ($\text{CF}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$) δ : 1.5–2.5 (6H, m), 4.0–4.6 (4H, m), 5.30 (4H, s), 7.38 (10H, s).

Preparation 64



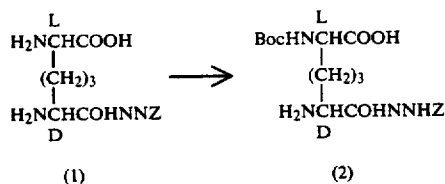
A solution of phenylhydrazine (4.30 g) in acetic acid (10 ml) was cooled to 10°C . and a solution of mesoDAP N-carboxyanhydride (4.80 g) in acetonitrile (35 ml) was added. The mixture was stirred for 1 hour at the same temperature and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was pulverized with ether to give mesoDAP-di-NHNHC $_6\text{H}_5$ (acetic acid salt) (2) (10.10 g).

The compound (2) was dissolved in a mixture of water (300 ml) and methanol (150 ml) and the pH was adjusted to 8.5. This solution was treated with leucine amino peptidase (from Hog Kidney) (5 mg) at 37°C . for 5 hours. After evaporation of methanol, the resulting aqueous layer was washed with ethyl acetate and concentrated to about 100 ml. The concentrate was applied to a column of HP-20 resin (200 ml). The column was eluted with 50% aqueous methanol. The eluate was evaporated to give mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHC $_6\text{H}_5$ (3) (2.50 g).

I.R. (Nujol): 3600–2200, 1640, 1600 cm^{-1} .

NMR ($\text{CF}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$) δ : 1.9–2.6 (6H), 4.0–4.5 (2H, m), 7.43 (5H, s).

Preparation 65



A mixture of mesoDAP-(D)-NHNH₂ (1) (3.38 g) and cupric chloride dihydrate (853 mg) in 0.25N sodium hydroxide (50 ml) was cooled to 0° C. and di-*t*-butyldicarbonate (2.83 g) was added. The mixture was stirred for 2 hours at the same temperature, during which time the pH of the reaction mixture was maintained at 9.5–10.0 by adding 1N sodium hydroxide. Hydrogen sulfide was bubbled into the mixture for 10 minutes and the precipitate was filtered off. The filtrate was neutralized to pH 5 with 1N hydrochloric acid and washed with ethyl acetate. The aqueous layer was concentrated to about 10 ml and stood overnight at 5° C. The precipitated crystalline solid was filtered and washed with water to give Boc-(L)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNH₂ (2) (2.92 g).

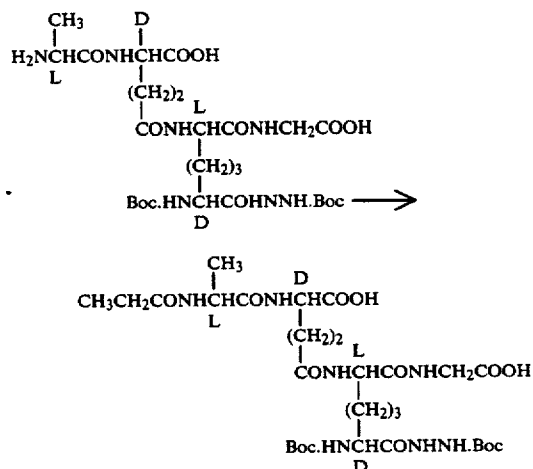
m.p. 201°–3° C. (dec.).

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 3280, 1725, 1700 cm⁻¹.

NMR (CD₃OD) δ: 1.40 (9H, s), 1.3–2.1 (6H, m), 3.8–4.1 (2H, m), 5.17 (2H, s), 7.38 (5H, s).

Example 1

(1) Step 1



L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meo-D-DAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH(1) (662 mg.) was dissolved in 50% aqueous acetone (8 ml.) and sodium bicarbonate (168 mg.) was added to the solution. To the mixture was added propionic chloride (408 mg.) at 0° C. and the resulting mixture was reacted at the same temperature for an hour, maintaining the pH 7–8 with sodium bicarbonate. The reaction mixture was adjusted to pH 3.0 with 1N hydrochloric acid and concentrated to about 2 ml. in vacuo. To the resulting residue were added ethyl acetate (150 ml.), methanol (10 ml.) and brine (30 ml.). The organic layer was separated, dried over sodium sulfate and then concentrated to dryness in vacuo. The concentrate was treated with ether to give propionyl-L-Ala-γ-D-(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-

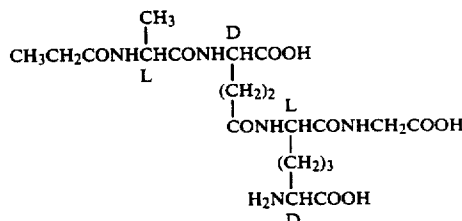
NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (2) (400 mg) as a white powder.

IR (Nujol): 3250, 1720 (shoulder), 1650 cm⁻¹.

NMR (CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 1.0–2.5 (36H, m), 3.97 (2H, s), 3.90–4.60 (4H, m).

Step (2)

10 Compound (2) →



Trifluoroacetic acid (1.8 ml) was added to propionyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (2) (350 mg) and the mixture was allowed to stand at ambient temperature for 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was evaporated in vacuo and the residual oil was triturated with ether to give a white solid. The solid was dissolved in water (10 ml) and to the solution were added 0.1N sulfuric acid (12.2 ml) and a solution of sodium periodate (260 mg) in water (4 ml) with stirring under ice-cooling. The stirring was continued for two hours and sodium bisulfite was added to the reaction mixture until the iodine colour was disappeared. The resulting mixture was evaporated to about 3 ml and the concentrate was adjusted to pH 2.5 with 1N hydrochloric acid, and then chromatographed on a macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP20 (50 ml) (trade mark, maker: Mitsubishi Chemical Industry Co., Ltd.) Elution was carried out with a mixture of water and methanol (9:1). The fractions containing the object compound (3) were collected and freeze-dried to give propionyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-meso-DAP-(L)-GlyOH (3) (102 mg) as a white solid.

NMR (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.11 (3H, t, J=8 Hz), 1.39 (3H, d, J=8 Hz), 2.31 (2H, q, J=8 Hz), 3.81 (1H, t, J=8 Hz), 3.96 (2H, s), 4.1584.40 (3H, m) [α]_D = -37.0° (C=0.20 water).

The following compounds were prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Steps 1 and 2 of Example 1, respectively.

EXAMPLE 2

(1) Step 1

Acetyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

I.R. (Nujol): 3250, 1720, 1630, 1525 cm⁻¹.

NMR (CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 2.00 (3H, s), 3.91 (2H, s).

(2) Step 2

Acetyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH

mp 110°–114° C. (dec.).

[α]_D = -0.36, water.

NMR (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.39 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 2.03 (3H, s), 3.79 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 4.02 (2H, s), 4.20–4.50 (3H, m).

EXAMPLE 3

(1) Step 1

Heptanoyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

I.R. (Nujol): 3280, 1720, 1650, 1520 cm^{-1} .

NMR (CD_3OD), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 0.70~1.07 (3H, t), 3.92 (2H, s), 4.15~4.60 (3H, m).

(2) Step 2

Heptanoyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH mp 175°~180° C.

NMR ($\text{D}_2\text{O} + \text{NaHCO}_3$), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 0.83 (3H, t), 1.40 (3H, d, $J=8$ Hz), 3.77 (2H, s), 4.1~4.5 (3H, m).

EXAMPLE 4

(1) Step 1

Isobutyryl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

I.R. (Nujol): 3260, 1720, 1650 cm^{-1} .

NMR (CD_3OD), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.13 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.24 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 3.96 (2H, s).

Isobutyryl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH

NMR (D_2O), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.07 (6H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.31 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 2.50 (1H, hept, $J=7$ Hz), 3.83 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 3.98 (2H, s), 4.2~4.5 (3H, m). $[\alpha]_D = -31.2^\circ$ ($C=0.17$, water).

EXAMPLE 5

(1) Step 1

Benzoyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

I.R. (Nujol): $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 3260, 1720, 1640 (broad), 1530 cm^{-1} .

NMR (CD_3OD), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 3.94 (2H, s), 7.45~7.70 (3H, m), 7.88~8.04 (2H, m).

(2) Step 2

Benzoyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH $[\alpha]_D = -4.2^\circ$ ($C=0.19$, water).

NMR (D_2O), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.53 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 3.83 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 3.98 (2H, s), 4.15~4.60 (3H, m), 7.40~7.65 (3H, m), 7.70~7.90 (2H, m).

EXAMPLE 6

(1) Step 1

D-mandelyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

I.R. (CD_3OD), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 3.94 (2H, s), 4.25~4.55 (3H, m), 5.12 (1H, s), 7.40 (5H, m).

(2) Step 2

D-mandelyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH $[\alpha]_D = -40.5$ ($C=0.19$, water).

NMR (D_2O), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.46 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 3.83 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 3.97 (2H, s), 4.13~4.50 (3H, m), 5.23 (1H, s), 7.48 (5H, s).

EXAMPLE 7

(1) Step 1

2-Methoxypropionyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

NMR (CD_3OD), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 3.41 (3H, s), 3.80 (1H, q, $J=7$ Hz), 3.95 (2H, s), 4.25~4.55 (3H, m).

(2) Step 2

2-Methoxypropionyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH.

$[\alpha]_D = -30.0^\circ$ ($C=0.21$, water).

NMR (D_2O), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.33 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.41 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 3.36 (3H, s), 3.75~4.03 (2H, m), 3.96 (2H, s), 4.2~4.5 (3H, m).

EXAMPLE 8

(1) Step 1

Phenoxyacetyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

I.R. (Nujol): 3280, 1650, 1520 cm^{-1} .

NMR (CD_3OD), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 3.92 (2H, s), 4.58 (2H, s), 6.85~7.10 (3H, m), 7.20~7.40 (2H, m).

(2) Step 2

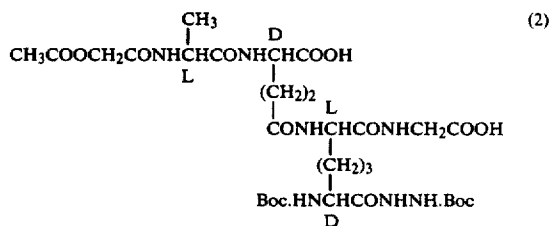
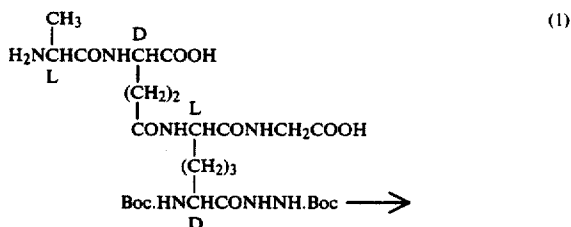
Phenoxyacetyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH.

$[\alpha]_D = -19.6^\circ$ ($C=0.23$, water).

NMR (D_2O), $\gamma(\text{ppm})$: 1.43 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 3.82 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 3.96 (2H, s), 4.20~4.55 (3H, m), 4.64 (2H, s), 6.97~7.15 (3H, m), 7.30~7.43 (2H, m).

EXAMPLE 9

(1) Step 1



Acetyloxyacetyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH(2) (570 mg) was prepared from L-Ala-γ-D-Gly(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (1) (794 mg) and acetylglycolic chloride of (246 mg) in substantially the same manner as that Step 1 of Example 1.

I.R. (Nujol): 3270, 1710, 1650, 1525 cm^{-1} .

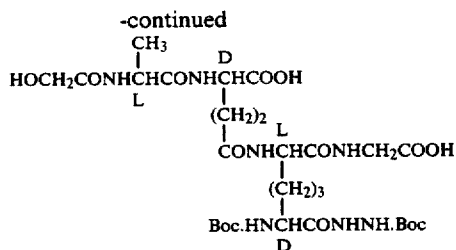
NMR ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.24 (3H, $J=7$ Hz), 2.08 (3H, s).

(2) Step 2

Compound (2) $\longrightarrow$

(3)

103

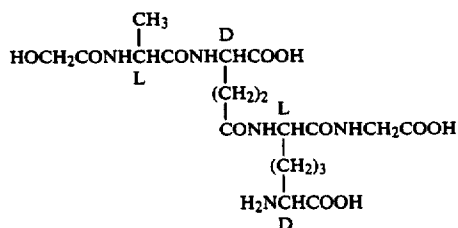


Acetyloxyacetyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (2) (490 mg) was dissolved in 50% aqueous methanol (20 ml) and the solution was adjusted to pH 9.0 with 5% potassium carbonate and then allowed to stand at ambient temperature for an hour. The solution was adjusted to pH 5 and concentrated in vacuo and then water (1 ml) was added to the concentrate. The mixture was adjusted to pH 2.5 with 1N hydrochloric acid and chromatographed on a column of macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP 20 (20 ml). After washing the column with water, elution was carried out with 50% aqueous methanol. The fractions containing the object compound (3) were collected and concentrated to give hydroxyacetyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (3) (370 mg) as a white solid.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1720 (shoulder), 1650, 1530 cm⁻¹.
NMR (D₂O), δ(ppm): 3.95 (2H, s), 4.11 (2H, s).

(3) Step 3

Compound (3) →



Hydroxyacetyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-meso-DAP-(L)-GlyOH (4) (234 mg) was prepared from hydroxyacetyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (3) (345 mg) in substantially the same manner as that of Step 2 of Example 1.

[α]_D = -25.2° (C=0.21, water).

NMR (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.43 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 3.91 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 3.99 (2H, s), 4.15 (2H, s), 4.20~4.55 (3H, m).

EXAMPLE 10

The following compounds were prepared in substantially the same manner as that of steps 1 and 2 of Example 1.

(1) Step 1

L-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP (L)-GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1720, 1650 cm⁻¹.

NMR (CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 2.13 (3H, s), 3.93 (2H, s).

104

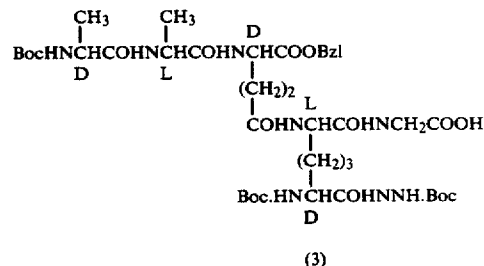
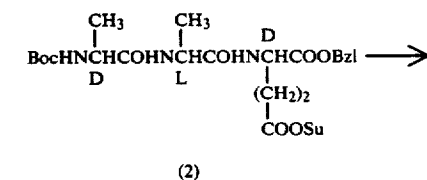
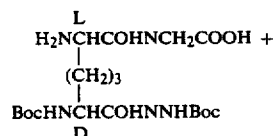
(2) Step 2

L-Lac-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH mp 170° 174° (dec.).

[α]_D = -33.2° (C=0.25, water).

NMR (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.38 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.45 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 3.89 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 4.01 (2H, s), 4.20~4.55 (4H, m).

EXAMPLE 11



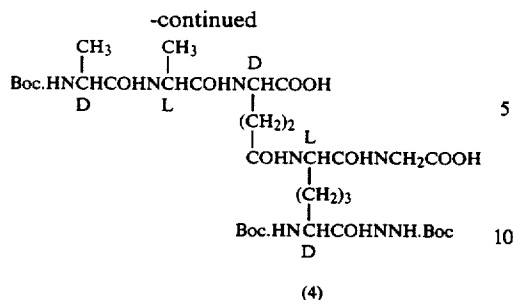
To a mixture of Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (1) (0.922 g) and triethylamine (0.202 g) in 50% aqueous dioxane (30 ml) was added Boc-D-Ala-L-Ala-D-Glu(oSu)oBzl. The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature overnight and then evaporated. The residue was adjusted to pH 8 with dil sodium bicarbonate and washed with ethyl acetate. The aqueous layer was acidified to pH 1 with dil hydrochloric acid and then extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated. The residue was crystallized from a mixture of ethyl acetate and ether, and then filtered. The crystal was washed with ether to give Boc-D-Ala-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP (D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (3) (1.45 g).

NMR (CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 1.29 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.32 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.40 (27H, s), 3.87~4.47 (4H, m), 5.14 (2H, s), 7.32 (5H, s).

(2) Step 2

Compound (3) →

105

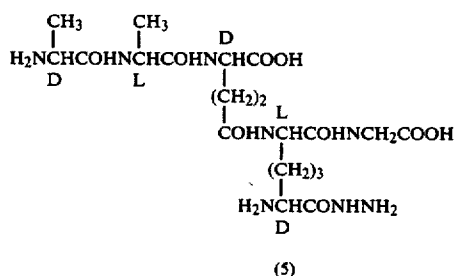


A solution of Boc-D-Ala-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OBzl)-
(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH
(3) (1.2 g) in a mixture (25 ml) of methanol and water
(2:1) was hydrogenated over 5% palladium-black (0.2
g) at two atmospheric pressures of hydrogen gas. After
the reaction was completed, the catalyst was filtered off
and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was pulver-
ized with isopropyl ether and filtered to give Boc-D-
Ala-L-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP (D)-
NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (4) (1.1 g).

NMR (CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 1.24 (3H, d, J=7 Hz),
1.35 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.44 (27H, s), 1.34~2.50 (10H,
m), 3.94 (2H, s), 3.87~4.50 (4H, m).

(3) Step 3

Compound (4) →



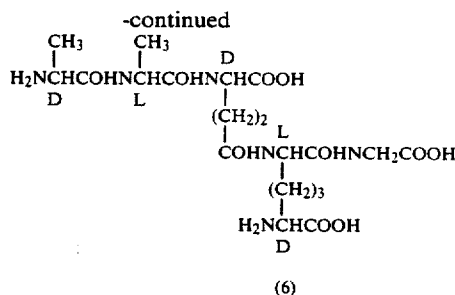
Boc-D-Ala-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-
meso-DAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (4) (1.0 g) was
dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (5 ml) and the solution
was stirred at ambient temperature for 30 minutes. The
reaction mixture was evaporated and the residue was
pulverized with ethyl acetate and filtered to give D-
Ala-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-meso-DAP-(D)-
NHNH₂-(L)-GlyOH (5) trifluoroacetic acid salt (0.81
g).

NMR (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.42 (3H, d, J=7 Hz),
1.57 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.34~2.50 (10H, m), 3.74 (2H,
s), 3.67~4.27 (4H, m).

(4) Step 4

Compound (5) →

106

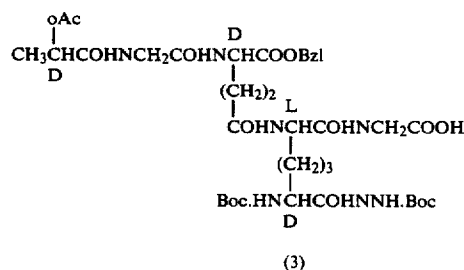
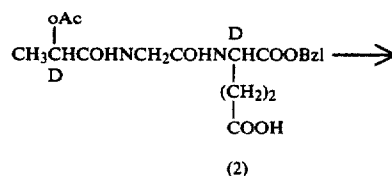
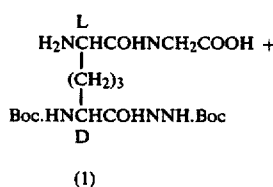


N-Bromosuccinimide (178 mg) was added to a solu-
tion of D-Ala-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-meso-DAP-
(D)-NHNH₂-(L)-GlyOH(5) trifluoroacetic acid salt
(532 mg) in 50% aqueous dioxane (10 ml). The mixture
was stirred at ambient temperature for an hour and ad-
justed to pH 3.5 with dil sodium bicarbonate and then
evaporated. The residue was dissolved in water and
chromatographed on a column of a macroporous non-
ionic adsorption resin, HP 20 (150 ml) and then eluted
with water. Eluates containing the object compound (6)
were combined and evaporated. The residue was
washed with methanol and dissolved in water. The
solution was adjusted to pH 3.0 and chromatographed
again on a column of macroporous non-ionic adsorption
resin, HP 20 (100 ml) and eluted with water. Fractions
containing the object compound (6) were combined and
evaporated to give a solid. The solid was dissolved in
water and lyophilized to give D-Ala-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-
OH)-(L)-meso-DAP-(L)-GlyOH (6) (120 mg).

NMR (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.45 (3H, d, J=7 Hz),
1.34~2.34 (10H, m), 3.88 (2H, s), 3.74~4.50 (4H, m).

EXAMPLE 12

(1) Step 1



D-Lac(oAc)-Gly-γ-D-GluBzl dicyclohexylamine salt
(2) (1.20 g) was dissolved in a mixture of ethyl acetate
(40 ml) and methylene chloride (10 ml). To the solution

107

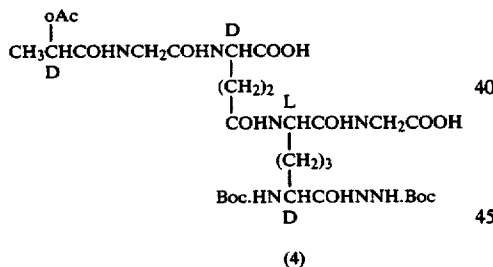
was added 1N hydrochloric acid (2 ml) and the precipitates thus formed were filtered off. The organic layer was washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate and then evaporated to give an oily residue. The residue was dissolved in methylene chloride (20 ml) and to the solution were added N-methyl morpholine (200 mg) and isobutyl chlorocarbonate (270 mg) at 0° C. The mixture was reacted at the same temperature for 20 minutes. To the reaction mixture was added a solution of Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (1) (860 mg) in a mixture of methylene chloride (40 ml) and dimethylformamide (50 ml) containing bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (2 ml) at 0° C.

The resulting mixture was stirred at the same temperature for two hours and concentrated in vacuo to give an oily residue. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate and the solution was washed with 2% hydrochloric acid. The organic layer was washed with successively with water and aqueous saturated sodium chloride solution and dried and then evaporated. The residue was thoroughly washed with ether and collected by filtration to give D-Lac(oAc)-Gly-γ-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (3) (1.0 g).

NMR (DMSO-d₆), δ(ppm): 0.80~2.60 (3H, m), 2.06 (3H, s), 3.76 (4H, broad s), 3.60~4.52 (3H, m), 5.00 (1H, q, J = 7 Hz), 5.12 (2H, s), 6.70 (1H, d J = 7 Hz), 7.38 (5H, s), 7.80~8.80 (5H, m), 9.58 (1H, s).

(2) Step 2

Compound (3) →



D-Lac(oAc)-Gly-γ-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (3) (0.9 g) was dissolved in glacial acetic acid (9 ml) and hydrogenated over 10% palladium black (200 mg) at ambient temperatures for 1.5 hours. The catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated in vacuo to give an oily residue which was pulverized with ether to give D-Lac(oAc)-Gly-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (4) (0.76 g).

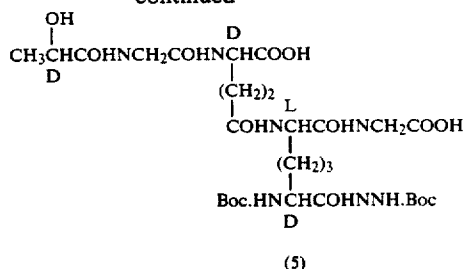
NMR (DMSO-d₆), δ(ppm): 0.80~2.80 (31H, m), 2.08 (3H, s), 3.72 (4H, broad s), 3.60~4.36 ((3H, m), 5.00 (1H, q, J = 7 Hz), 6.76 (1H, m), 7.72~8.40 (5H, m), 8.70 (1H, m), 9.60 (1H, s).

(3) Step 3

Compound (4) →

108

-continued



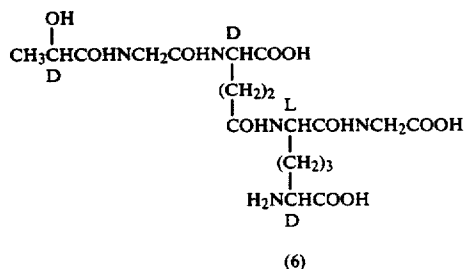
D-Lac(oAc)-Gly-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (4) (0.70 g) was dissolved in 50% aqueous methanol (20 ml) and the solution was adjusted to pH 9.0 with 5% aqueous potassium carbonate. The solution was allowed to stand at ambient temperature for 3 hours and adjusted to pH 7.0 with 5% hydrochloric acid. The solution was chromatographed on a column of macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP 20 (25 ml) and eluted successively with water (100 ml) and 50% aqueous methanol (100 ml). The latter fraction was evaporated to give a posty residue which was pulverized with ether to give D-Lac-Gly-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (5) (0.40 g).

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1730, 1690 1650 (broad) cm⁻¹.

NMR (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.0~2.60 (31H, m), 4.00 (4H, s), 4.20~4.60 (4H, m).

(4) Step 4

Compound (5) →



D-Lac-Gly-γ-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (5) (335 mg) was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (3 ml) and the solution was stirred at ambient temperature for 15 minutes. The solution was evaporated in vacuo and the residue thus obtained was pulverized with ether to give a white powder. The powder was dissolved in a mixture of water (8 ml) and 0.1N sulfuric acid (11.6 ml) and the solution was cooled in an ice-bath.

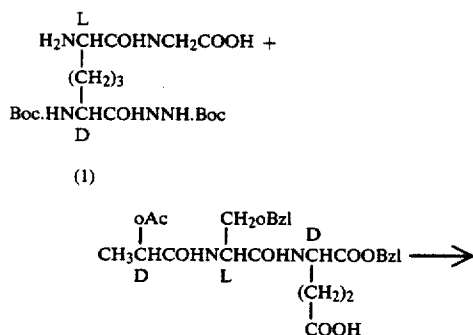
To the solution was added an aqueous sodium metaperiodate solution (240 mg in 3 ml of water) and allowed to react at 0° C. for an hour. The resulting reaction mixture was treated with an aqueous sodium bicarbonate until the purple color of the solution was disappeared. The solution was adjusted to pH 3.0 and concentrated to about 3 ml. The concentrate was adjusted to pH 2.0 and then chromatographed on a column of macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP 20 (80 ml) and eluted with water. Fractions containing the object compound (6) were collected and evaporated in vacuo to give a posty residue which was dissolved in water

and lyophilized to give D-Lac-Gly-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH (6) (0.150 g). $[\alpha]_D = -5.0^\circ$ (C=0.2 in water).

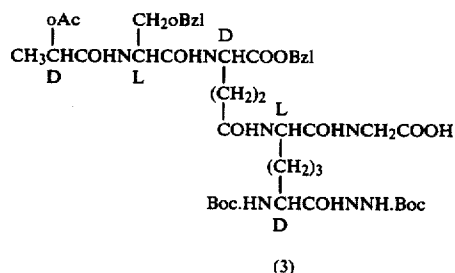
NMR (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.38 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.20~2.60 (10H, m), 3.82 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 3.96 (2H, s), 5.40 (2H, s), 3.68~4.52 (3H, m).

EXAMPLE 13

(1) Step 1



(2)



D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ser(oBzl)-D-GluoBzl (2) dicyclohexylamine salt (1.40 g) was dissolved in a mixture of ethyl acetate (40 ml) and chloroform (10 ml). To the solution 40 was added 1H hydrochloric acid (2 ml) and the precipitates thus formed were filtered off. The organic layer was separated, washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate and then evaporated to give an oily residue (1.08 g). The residue was dissolved in methylene chloride (20 ml) and the solution was treated with N-methylmorpholine (198 mg) and cooled to -10°C . and then isobutylchlorocarbonate (270 mg) was added thereto. To the mixture was added Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (1) (860 mg) in a mixture of 45 methylene chloride (40 ml) and dimethylformamide (50 ml) containing bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (2 ml). The resulting mixture was allowed to react at -10°C . for two hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo to give an oily residue which was dissolved in 55 ethyl acetate. The solution was washed with 2% aqueous hydrochloric acid and the ethyl acetate layer was separated, washed with water and dried over magnesium sulfate, and then evaporated. The crystalline residue thus obtained was washed with ether to give D- 60 Lac-(oAc)-L-Ser(oBzl)-γ-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-L-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (3) (1.55 g).

NMR ($DMSO-d_6$), δ (ppm): 1.00~2.36 (10H, m), 1.38 (18H, s), 1.32 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 2.04 (3H, s), 3.44~4.84 (8H, m), 4.48 (2H, s), 5.06 (1H, q, $J=7$ Hz), 5.14 (2H, s), 6.72 (1H, broad s), 7.34 (5H, s), 7.40 (5H, s), 7.92 (1H, broad s), 8.04~8.44 (4H, m), 8.72 (1H, broad s), 9.60 (1H, s).

Successively, the following compounds were prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Steps 2 to 4 of Example 12, respectively.

Step 2

D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ser(OH)-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

NMR (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.32 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 2.08 (3H, s), 3.40~4.52 (8H, m), 5.06 (1H, q, $J=7$ Hz), 6.76 (1H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 7.64~8.32 (4H, m), 8.72 (1H, s), 9.60 (1H, s).

(3) Step 3

D-LaC-L-Ser-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

NMR (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.00~2.60 (10H, m), 1.42 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.44 (18H, s), 3.60~5.00 (9H, m).

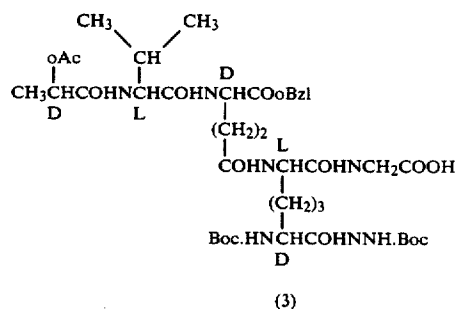
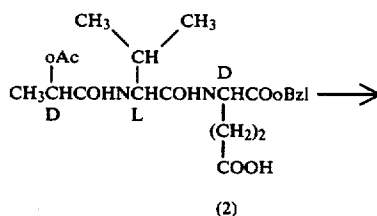
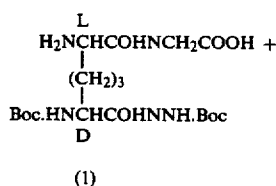
(4) Step 4

D-Lac-L-Ser-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH, $[\alpha]_D = -18.5^\circ$ (C=0.2 water).

NMR (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.20~2.60 (10H, m), 1.40 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 3.60~5.10 (7H, m), 3.98 (2H, s).

EXAMPLE 14

(1) Step 1



D-Lac(aAc)-L-Val-γ-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (3) (1.20 g) was prepared from Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (1) (800 mg) and D-Lac(oAc)-L-Val-γ-D-GluoBzl (2) (0.90 g) in substantially the same manner as that of Step 1 of Example 12.

NMR ($DMSO-d_6$), δ (ppm): 0.80 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 0.84 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.83 (18H, s), 1.0~2.40 (14H, m), 2.04 (3H, s), 3.60~4.48n (6H, m), 5.08n (1H, q, $J=7$ Hz), 5.14 (5H, s), 6.74 (1H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 7.36 (5H, s), 7.80~8.40 (5H, m), 8.68 (1H, s), 9.54 (1H, s).

Successively, the following compounds were prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Steps 2 to 4 of Example 12, respectively.

(2) Step 2

D-Lac-(oAc)-L-Val- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

NMR (DMSO- d_6), δ (ppm): 0.82 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 0.86 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.00~2.40 (14H, m), 2.04 (3H, s), 3.60~4.40 (6H, m), 5.04 (1H, q, $J=7$ Hz), 6.76 (2H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 7.80~8.40 (4H, m), 8.70 (1H, s), 9.60 (1H, s).

(3) Step 3

D-Lac-L-Val- γ -Glu(α -OH)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

NMR (D_2O), δ (ppm): 0.96 (6H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.12~2.56 (32H, m), 3.96 (2H, s), 3.80~4.52 (5H, m).

(4) Step 4

D-Lac-L-Val- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH.

$[\alpha]_D = -28.0^\circ$ ($C=0.2$, water).

NMR (D_2O), δ (ppm): 0.96 (6H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.37 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.20~2.60 (11H, m), 3.96 (2H, s), 3.68~4.50 (5H, m).

The following compounds were prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Steps 1 and 2 of Example 1, respectively.

EXAMPLE 15

(1) Step 1

Thienylacetyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

NMR (CD_3OD), δ (ppm): 3.76 (2H, s), 3.87 (2H, s), 4.15~4.40 (3H, m), 6.90 (2H, m), 7.20 (1H, m).

(2) Step 2

Thienylacetyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH.

$[\alpha]_D = -33.5^\circ$ ($C=0.20$ water).

NMR (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.40 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 3.81 (3H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 3.89 (2H, s), 3.97 (2H, s), 4.13~4.44 (3H, m), 7.02 (2H, m), 7.35 (1H, m).

EXAMPLE 16

(1) Step 1

Phenylcarbonmoyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1730, 1650, 1595, 1540 cm^{-1} .

NMR (CD_3OD), δ (ppm): 3.95 (2H, s), 4.2~4.6 (3H, m), 6.9~7.1 (5H, m).

(2) Step 2

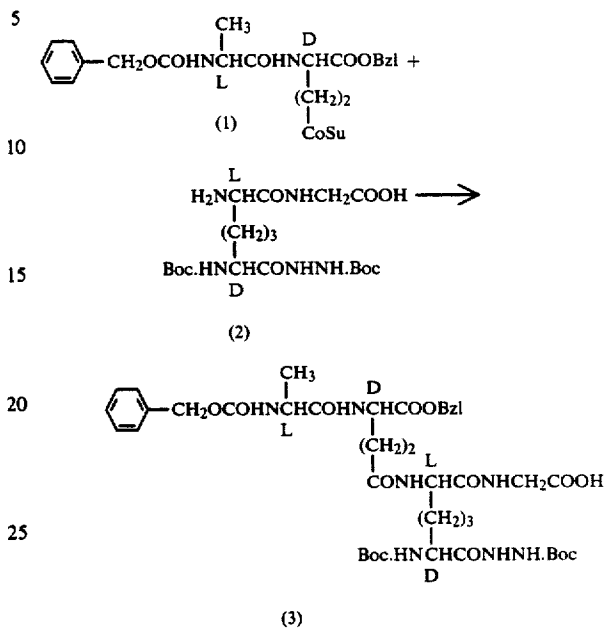
Phenylcarbonyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH.

$[\alpha]_D = -38.5^\circ$ ($C=0.20$, DMSO).

NMR ($D_2O+NaHCO_3$), δ (ppm): 1.43 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 3.96 (1H, m), 3.76 (2H, s), 4.05~4.5 (3H, m), 7.35 (5H, m).

EXAMPLE 17

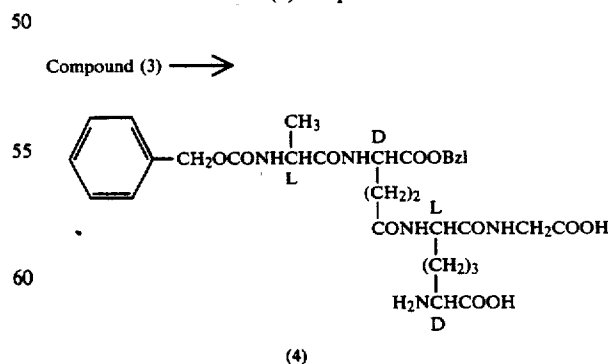
(1) Step 1



Triethylamine (720 mg) and benzyloxycarbonyl-L-Ala-D-Glu(α Su) α Bzl (1) (3.51 g) was added to a solution of Boc-(D)-meso-DAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (2) (3.00 g) in a mixture of dioxane (90 ml) and water (70 ml). The resulting mixture was allowed to stand at ambient temperature for 18 hours, and concentrated to about 50 ml. The concentrate was adjusted to pH 3 with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate (300 ml) containing methanol (20 ml). The organic layer was washed with brine (100 ml), dried over sodium sulfate and then evaporated in vacuo. The residue was washed with ether and filtered to give benzyloxycarbonyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (3) (5.53 g).

NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ (ppm): 1.07 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 3.64~4.48 (6H, m), 5.04 (2H, s), 5.12 (2H, s), 6.56 (1H, d, $J=8$ Hz), 7.35 (10H, s), 7.95 (1H, d, $J=8$ Hz), 8.15 (1H, m), 8.35 (1H, d, $J=8$ Hz), 8.70 (1H, s), 9.56 (1H, s).

(2) Step 2



Benzyloxycarbonyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (3) (1.43 g) was added to trifluoroacetic acid (6 ml) and the mixture was stood at ambient temperature for an hour. The

113

mixture was evaporated in vacuo and the residual oil was triturated with isopropyl ether to give a solid. The solid was dissolved in a mixture of water (35 ml) and methanol (10 ml). To this solution were added 1N sulfuric acid (40 ml) and sodium periodate (860 mg) at 0° C. The mixture was stirred at the same temperature for 1.5 hours and concentrated to 10 ml and adjusted to pH 4 with 1N sodium hydroxide. The precipitate thus obtained was collected and dried over phosphorus pentoxide to give benzyloxycarbonyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH (4) (1.09 g).

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1700, 1660, 1540cm³¹.

NMR (D₂O + NaHCO₃), δ(ppm): 3.78 (2H, s), 5.04 (2H, s), 5.13 (2H, s), 7.40 (10H, m).

(3) Step 3

15

114

hour. The reaction mixture was adjusted to pH 2.0 with 1N hydrochloric acid and concentrated to about 3 ml. The residual solution was chromatographed on a column of a macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP 20 (60 ml) and eluted with a mixture of water and methanol (7:3). The fraction containing the object compound (5) was collected and concentrated to dryness in vacuo to give benzyloxycarbonyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH (5) (190 mg).

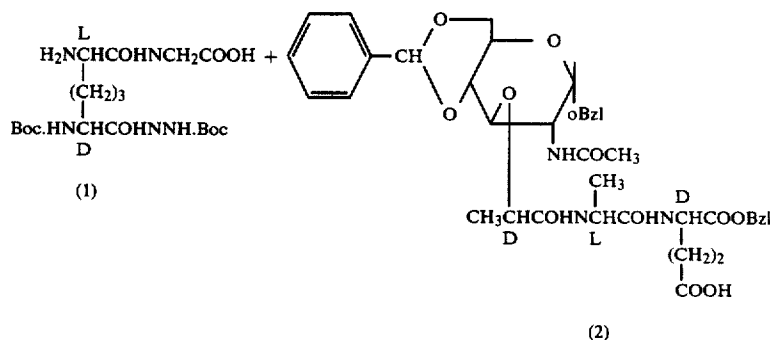
mp 205°-207° C.

[α]_D = -12.1° (C=0.19, water).

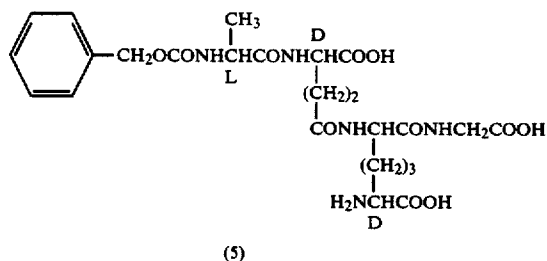
NMR (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.37 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 3.78 (1H, m), 3.93 (2H, s), 4.05~4.40 (3H, m), 5.14 (2H, s), 7.45 (5H, s).

EXAMPLE 18

(1) Step 1



Compound (4) →



To a suspension of benzyloxycarbonyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH (4) (600 mg) in water (10 ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide (35 ml). The mixture was stood at ambient temperature for an

To a mixture of 1-O-α-benzyl-4,6O-benzylidene-N-acetyl-muramyl-L-Ala-γ-D-GluBzl (2) (0.76 g) and triethylamine (0.10 g) in methylene chloride (5 ml) was added dropwise iso-butyl chloroformate (0.13 g) at -18° C. The resulting mixture was stirred at -15° C. for 50 minutes and to this mixture was added at 31 28° C. silyl ester of Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (1) which was prepared from Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (0.46 g) and bis(trimethylsilyl)-acetamide in a mixture (5 ml) of methylene chloride and dimethylformamide (5:1) with stirring at ambient temperature. The mixture was stirred at -15° C. for 1.5 hours and allowed to warm up to ambient temperature. The solution was distilled off and to the residue thus obtained was added 2% aqueous hydrochloric acid (10 ml) to give a powder. The powder was collected by filtration and washed with water

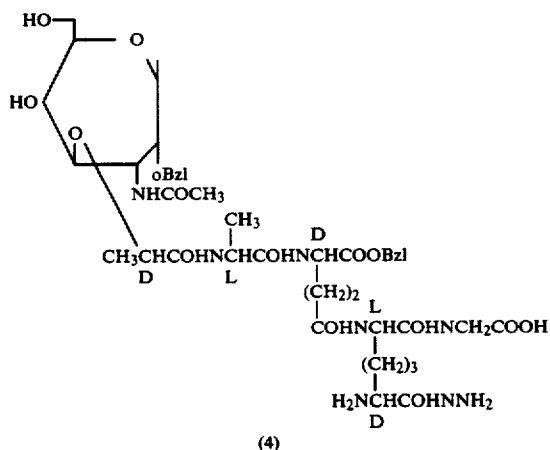
to give 1-O- α -benzyl-4,6-O-benzylidene-N-acetylmuramyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -oBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (3) (1.14 g).

NMR (DMSO- d_6), δ (ppm): 1.48 (18H, s), 1.1~1.6 (8H, m), 1.85 (3H, s), 1.8~2.3 (8H, m), 3.7~4.0 (8H, m), 4.0~4.5 (5H, m), 4.7 (2H, m), 4.90 (1H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 5.15 (2H, s), 5.72 (1H, s), 7.33 (5H, s), 7.40 (5H, s), 7.34 (5H, s),

8.1~8.3 (4H, m), 8.3~8.7 (3H, m).

(2) Step 2

Compound (3) $\longrightarrow$



1-O- α -benzyl-4,6-O-benzylidene-N-acetylmuramyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -oBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (3) (0.81 g) was added to trifluoroacetic acid (4ml) and the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 15 minutes.

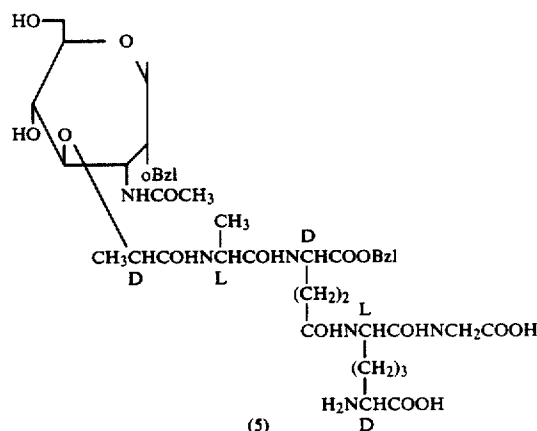
The solvent was distilled off and the residue was pulverized with ether and filtered to give 1-O- α -benzyl-N-acetyl-muramyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -oBzl)-(L)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNH $_2$ -(L)-GlyOH (4) trifluoroacetic acid salt (0.65 g).

NMR (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.38 (6H, α , $J=7$ Hz), 1.84 (3H, s), 1.2~1.5 (2H, m), 1.7~2.1 (6H, m), 2.2~2.4 (2H, m), 3.6~4.0 (8H, m), 4.2~4.5 (5H, m), 5.18 (2H, s), 7.4 (10H, s).

(3) Step 3

Compound (4) $\longrightarrow$

-continued



To a solution of 1-O- α -benzyl-N-acetylmuramyl-L-Ala- α -D-Glu(α -oBzl)-(L)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNH $_2$ -(L)-GlyOH (4) trifluoroacetic acid salt (0.58 g) in 60% aqueous acetic acid was added manganese dioxide (0.15 g) and the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated. The concentrate was dissolved in water (3ml) and the solution was adjusted to pH 8 with conc. ammonium hydroxide. To the solution was added methanol (3ml) and the mixture was allowed to stand in a refrigerator. An additional 14 ml of 5% aqueous methanol was added to the mixture and the resulting mixture was filtered.

The filtrate was concentrated and the concentrate was dissolved in 1N acetic acid (30 ml) and the solution was put on a column of a chelate resin. The column was eluted with water and the fractions containing the object compound (5) were collected and concentrated to give an oil. The oil was dissolved in water and the solution was adjusted to pH 2.6 and put on a column of a macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP 20. The column was washed with water and eluted with 50% aqueous methanol. The fractions containing the object compound (5) were combined and concentrated to give 1-O- α -benzyl-N-acetylmuramyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -oBzl)-(L)-GlyOH (5) (0.25 g).

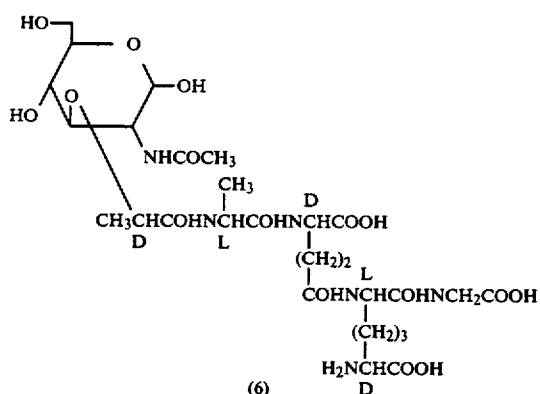
NMR (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.35 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.38 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.2~1.6 (2H, m), 1.80 (3H, s), 1.6~2.0 (6H, m), 2.2~2.4 (2H, m), 3.5~3.9 (8H, m), 4.2~4.5 (5H, m), 4.90 (1H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 5.20 (2H, s), 7.38 (5H, s), 7.40 (5H, s).

(4) Step 4

Compound (5) $\longrightarrow$

117

-continued

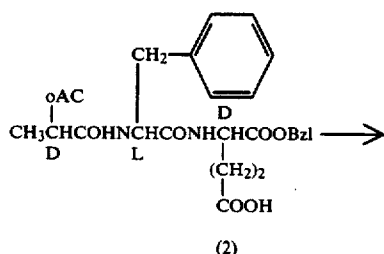
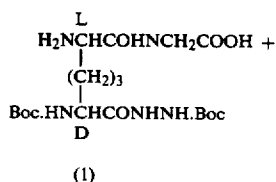


A solution of 1-O-benzyl-N-acetylmuramyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -oBzl)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH (5) (0.20 g) in a mixture of water (20 ml) and acetic acid (1.5 ml) was hydrogenated over 10% palladium black (0.10 g) under an atmospheric pressure of hydrogen. The catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated to give a white solid (0.15 g). The solid was dissolved in water (21) and lyophilized to give N-acetylmuramyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH (6) (0.12 g).

NMR (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.38 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.41 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.2~1.6 (2H, m), 1.99 (3H, s), 1.6~2.2 (6H, m), 2.2~2.4 (2H, m), 3.4~4.0 (5H, m), 3.82 (2H, s), 4.1~4.5 (6H, m), 5.19 (1H, m).

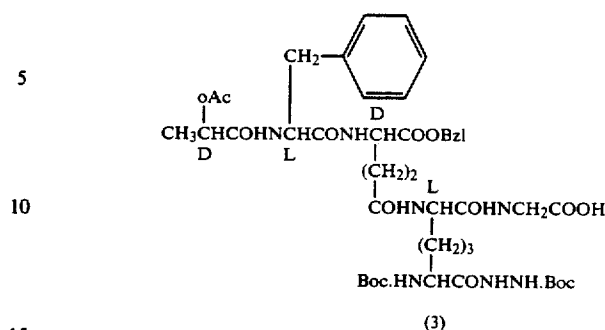
EXAMPLE 19

(1) Step 1



118

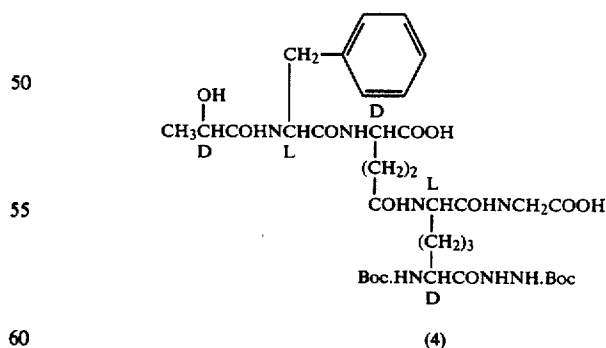
-continued



D-Lac(oAc)-L-Phe-D-GluoBzl (2) (1.0 g) was dissolved in methylene chloride (40 l) and N-methylmorpholine (200 mg) was added thereto. To this stirred solution cooled at -10° C. in an ice salt-bath, isobutylchlorocarbonate (270 mg) was added and the mixture was allowed to react at the same temperature for 20 minutes. To the reaction mixture was added the silyl ester prepared from Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (1) (920 mg) in a mixture of methylene chloride (20 ml) and dimethylformamide (10 ml) containing bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (2 ml). The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 hours and concentrated under reduced pressure to give an oily residue which was dissolved in ethyl acetate and washed with 2% hydrochloric acid. The organic layer was washed successively with water and saturated sodium chloride and then dried. Evaporation of the solvent gave a residue which was thoroughly washed with ether and collected by filtration to give D-Lac(oAc)-L-Phe- γ -D-Glu(α -oBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (3) (1.660 g).

NMR ($DMSO-d_6$), δ (ppm): 1.10 (2H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.23~2.43 (28H, m), 2.00 (3H, s), 2.86~3.23 (2H, m), 3.73~4.70 (6H, m), 5.17 (2H, s), 7.23 (5H, s), 7.36 (5H, s), 7.70~8.90 (5H, m) 9.60 (1H, s).

(2) Step 2

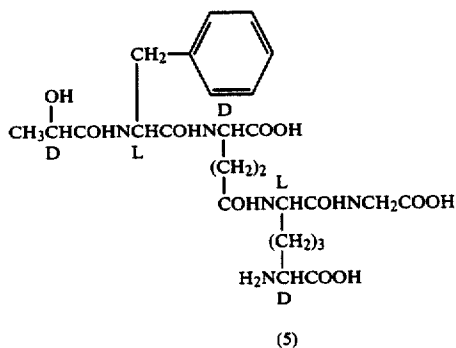
45 Compound (3) $\longrightarrow$ 

D-Lac(oAc)-L-Phe- δ -D-Glu(α -oBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (3) (1.50 g) was dissolved in 50% aqueous methanol (20 ml). To this solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide (5 ml) and the resulting solution was allowed to stand at ambient temperature for 2 hours. The solution was concentrated to about 3.0 ml after adjusting the pH of the solution to pH

7.0. The pH of the solution was adjusted again to about 2.0 and the precipitates thus formed was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated sodium chloride and dried over magnesium sulfate and then the solvent was evaporated to give D-Lac-(OH)-L-Phe- δ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (4) (0.960 g).

NMR (DMSO- d_6), δ (ppm): 1.12 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.0~2.32 (28H, m), 2.72~3.20 (2H, m), 3.60~4.80 (7H, m), 6.72 (1H, m), 7.20 (5H, s), 7.48~8.80 (5H, m), 9.52 (1H, s).

(3) Step 3

Compound (4) $\longrightarrow$ 

D-Lac-(OH)-L-Phe- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (4) was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (5 ml) and the solution was stirred at ambient temperature for 15 minutes. Evaporation of the solvent under reduced pressure gave an oily residue, which was pulverized with ether to give a white powder. The powder was dissolved in a mixture of water (15 ml) and 0.1 N sulfuric acid and the solution was cooled in an ice-bath. To this stirred solution was added an aqueous sodium periodate solution (528 mg in 8 ml of water) and the mixture was allowed to react at the same temperature for an hour. The resulting reaction mixture was treated with sodium bisulfite until the brown color of the mixture became clear and the pH of the solution was adjusted to about 3.0. Then, the solution was concentrated to about 4 ml and the pH of the solution was adjusted again to pH 2.0. The solution was applied to a column of a macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP 20 (60 ml) and eluted with water. Evaporation of fractions containing the object compound (5) was carried out to give D-Lac(OH)-L-Phe- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH (5) (0.45 g).

$[\alpha]_D = -5.0^\circ$ ($C=0.2$, water).

NMR (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.28 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.3~2.28 (10H, m), 3.08 (2H, ABq, $J=16$ Hz), 3.80 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 3.96 (2H, s), 4.0~4.44 (4H, m), 7.32 (5H, s).

The following compounds were prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Steps 1 and 2 of Example 1, respectively.

EXAMPLE 20

(1) Step 1

Pivaloyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

N.M.R. (CD_3OD), δ (ppm): 1.22 (9H, s), 1.38 (2H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.48 (18H, s), 1.34~2.42 (10H, m), 3.95 (2H, s), 4.27~4.60 (4H, m).

(2) Step 2

Pivaloyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH.

N.M.R. (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.20 (9H, s), 1.37 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.34~2.42 (10H, m), 3.80 (2H, s), 4.10~4.45 (4H, m).

EXAMPLE 21

(1) Step 1

Adamantane-1-carbonyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

I.R. (Nujol): 3280, 1720 (shoulder), 1630, 1520 cm^{-1} . Adamantane-1-carbonyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH.

$[\alpha]_D = -18.9^\circ$ ($c=0.18$, water).

N.M.R. (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.46 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 3.83 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 3.98 (2H, s), 4.25~4.5 (3H, m).

EXAMPLE 22

(1) Step 1

Lauroyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1730 (shoulder), 1650, 1520 cm^{-1} .

N.M.R. (CD_3OD), δ (ppm): 0.96 (3H, m), 3.96 (2H, s).

(2) Step 2

Lauroyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH.

$[\alpha]_D = -30.0^\circ$ ($c=0.14$, 1 N NaOH).

N.M.R. ($D_2O+NaHCO_3$), δ (ppm): 0.88 (3H, m), 3.65~3.85 (3H, m), 4.10~4.60 (3H, m).

EXAMPLE 23

(1) Step 1

Salicyloyl(oBzl)-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

N.M.R. (CD_3OD), δ (ppm): 1.42 (9H, s), 1.44 (9H, s), 3.87 (2H, s), 5.23 (2H, s), 6.93~7.55 (8H, m), 7.94 (1H, d, d, $J=2$ and 7 Hz).

(2) Step 2

Salicyloyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH.

$[\alpha]_D = 4.6$ ($c=0.13$ water).

N.M.R. (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.51 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 3.77 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 3.91 (2H, s), 6.97~7.10 (2H, m), 7.40~7.55 (1H, m), 7.71~7.79 (1H, m).

EXAMPLE 24

(1) Step 1

α -ethylhexanoyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

N.M.R. (CD_3OD), δ (ppm): 0.88 (6H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 1.42 (9H, s), 1.54 (9H, s), 1.80~2.36 (19H, m), 3.94 (2H, s).

(2) Step 2

α -ethylhexanoyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH.

$[\alpha]_D = -46.7$ ($c=0.12$, water).

N.M.R. (D_2O), δ (ppm): 0.81 (6H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 1.37 (2H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 3.81 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 3.96 (2H, s), 4.2~4.5 (3H, m).

EXAMPLE 25

(1) Step 1

Nicotinoyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

N.M.R. (CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 1.40 (18H, m), 3.90 (2H, s), 7.50 (1H, d, J=8 and 5 Hz), 8.31 (1H, m), 8.69 (1H, m), 9.11 (1H, m).

(2) Step 2

Nicotinoyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH

[α]_D = -7.7° (c=0.22, water).

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.56 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 3.83 (1H, t, J=6 Hz), 3.95 (2H, s), 7.94 (1H, d, J=8 and 4 Hz), 8.85 (1H, m), 9.10 (1H, m).

EXAMPLE 26

(1) Step 1

Stearoyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1720, 1630, 1530 cm⁻¹.

N.M.R. (CD₃OD + CDCl₃), δ(ppm): 0.80 (3H, m) 3.95 (2H, s).

(2) Step 2

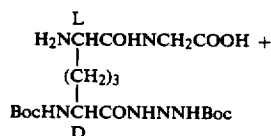
Stearoyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH.

[α]_D = -30.8° (c=0.13, 1 N NaOH).

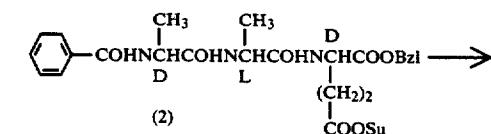
I.R. (Nujol): 3280, 1730, 1630, 1530 cm⁻¹, NMR (NaOD + D₂O) δ(ppm) 0.83 (3H, m), 3.24 (1H, m), 3.82 (2H, s).

EXAMPLE 27

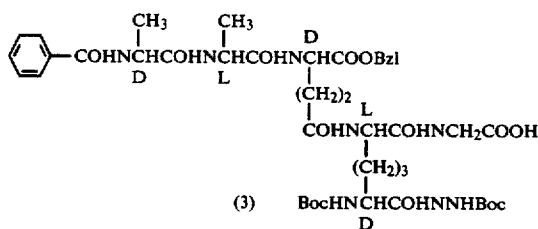
(1) Step 1



(1)



(2)



(3)

To a mixture of Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (1) (0.46 g) and triethylamine (0.11 g) in a mixture (20 ml) of dioxane and water (2:1) was added benzoyl-D-Ala-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(γ-OSu)OBzl (2) (0.58 g).

The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 18 hours. After evaporation of dioxane, the

remaining aqueous layer was acidified to pH 1 with dil. hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate.

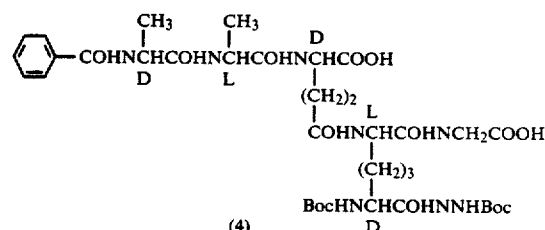
The extract was washed with water, dried and evaporated. The residue was triturated with ether to give benzoyl-D-Ala-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (3) (0.64 g).

I.R. (Nujol): 3290, 1720, 1680, 1640 cm⁻¹.

(2) Step 2

10

Compound (3) →



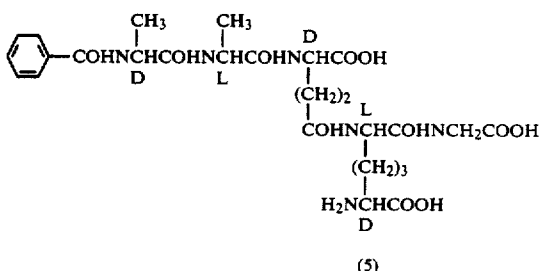
(4)

To a solution of benzoyl-D-Ala-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (3) (0.58) in a mixture (30 ml) of methanol and water (2:1) was added 10% palladium carbon and the mixture was shaken under three atmospheric pressure of hydrogen for 3 hours. The catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was triturated with ether to give benzoyl-D-Ala-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (4) (0.44 g).

I.R. (Nujol): 3250, 1720, 1660-1360 cm⁻¹.

(3) Step 3

Compound (4) →



(5)

Benzoyl-D-Ala-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (4) (0.40 g) was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (6 ml) at 0° C. and the solution was stirred at the same temperature for an hour. After evaporation of trifluoroacetic acid, a small amount of benzene was added to the residue and the mixture was evaporated. The residue was dissolved in water (3 ml) and the solution was acidified with 1 N sulfuric acid (0.5 ml). To the solution was added dropwise a solution of sodium periodate (0.14 g) in water (3 ml) at 0° C. After stirring for an hour, sodium bisulfite was added thereto until the color of the reaction mixture became clear. After adjustment of the pH to 3.2, the reaction mixture was concentrated to about 4 ml. The concentrate was put on a column of a macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP 20 (20 ml) and, after washing with water, eluted with 30% aqueous methanol. The fractions containing the object compound (5)

123

were concentrated and the concentrate was lyophilized to give benzoyl-D-Ala-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH (5) (120 mg).

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.50 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.57 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.42-2.42 (10H, m), 3.95 (2H, s), 3.37-4.67 (5H, m), 7.54-7.95 (5H, m).

The following compounds were prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Steps 1-3 of Example 27.

EXAMPLE 28

(1) Step 1

Acetyl-D-Ala-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

N.M.R. (CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 1.40 (18H, s), 1.33 (6H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.92 (3H, s), 1.84-2.30 (10H, m), 3.88 (2H, s), 3.84-4.25 (5H, m), 5.12 (2H, s), 7.30 (5H, m).

(2) Step 2

Acetyl-D-Ala-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH.

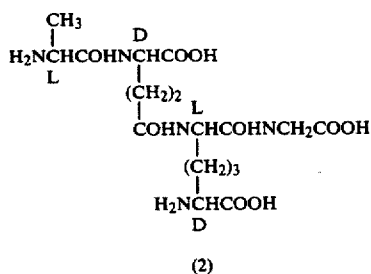
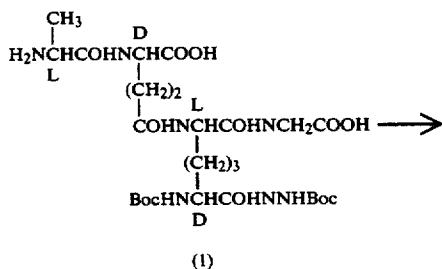
N.M.R. (CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 1.32 (6H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.34-2.32 (10H, m), 1.90 (3H, s), 3.79-4.25 (5H, m), 3.89 (2H, s), 5.12 (2H, s), 7.30 (5H, s).

(3) Step 3

Acetyl-D-Ala-L-Ala-γ-(D)-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH.

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.32 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.40 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.25-2.38 (10H, m), 3.80 (1H, t, J=6 Hz), 3.96 (2H, s), 4.24-4.42 (4H, m).

EXAMPLE 29



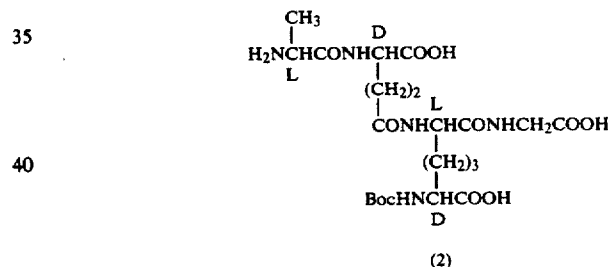
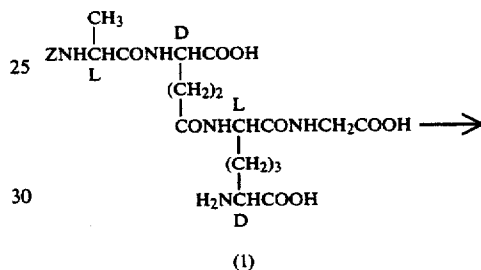
L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (1) (662 mg) was added to trifluoroacetic acid (4 ml) and the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 50 minutes. After removal of trifluoroacetic acid by evaporation, the residue was dissolved in water (20 ml) and cooled to 0° C. To this cooled solution were added 0.1 N sulfuric acid (25 ml) and a solution of sodium periodate (535 mg) in water (5 ml). The mixture was stirred at the same temperature for an hour, during which time the reaction solution turned back brown. Sodium bisulfate was added until the color was clear and the mixture was adjusted to pH

124

3 with dil. sodium bicarbonate. After concentration of the mixture, the residue was dissolved in a small amount of water and adjusted again to pH 3. The solution was put on a column of a macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP 20 (130 ml) and eluted with water. The fractions containing the object compound (2) was concentrated. This chromatograph operation was repeated, and the fraction containing the object compound (2) was lyophilized to give an amorphous solid (220 mg). A 180 mg portion of the solid was further purified by column chromatograph using an active carbon (20 ml) and eluted with a mixture of water and acetone (4:1). The eluate was evaporated and the residue was pulverized with acetone to give L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH (2) (90 mg). [α]_D = -10.6 (C=0.34 water).

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.55 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 3.75 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 3.86 (2H, s), 4.05-4.45 (m).

EXAMPLE 30



To a solution of Z-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH (1) (2.04 g) and sodium bicarbonate (890 mg) in a 50% aqueous dioxane (40 ml) was added di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (1.53 g). After stirring for 4 hours at ambient temperature, additional di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (770 mg) 1 N sodium hydroxide (0.6 ml) was added thereto and the mixture was stirred for 2.5 hours. To the mixture was added acetic acid (5 ml) and the resulting mixture was hydrogenated over 10% palladium black (300 mg) under an atmospheric pressure of hydrogen.

After the catalyst was filtered off, the filtrate was evaporated in vacuo.

The residue was dissolved in water (5 ml) and put on a column of macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP 20 (120 ml). The fractions eluted with a mixture of water and methanol (7:3) were combined and concentrated to give L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH (2) (1.17 g).

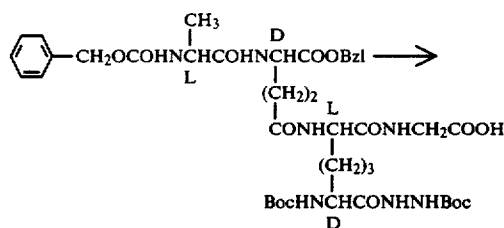
I.R. (Nujol): 3280, 1650 (shoulder), 1520 (shoulder).

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.42 (9H, s), 1.55 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 3.93 (2H, s), 4.04-4.50 (4H, m).

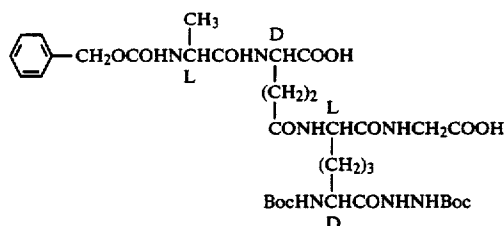
125

EXAMPLE 31

(1) Step 1



(1)



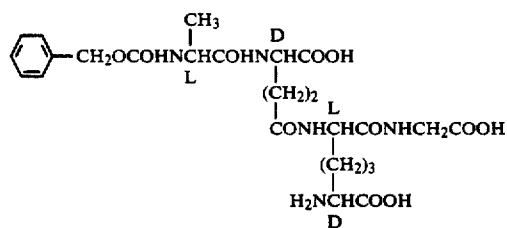
(2)

To a suspension of benzyloxycarbonyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (1) (4.43 g) in a mixture of 50% aqueous methanol was added 1 N sodium hydroxide (11 ml) at 0° C. After stirring for an hour at the same temperature, the reaction mixture was concentrated to about 30 ml, adjusted to pH 2 with 1 N hydrochloric acid, and then extracted with ethyl acetate (300 ml). The organic layer was washed with 0.5 N hydrochloric acid (30 ml) and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate and then concentrated in vacuo to give a white powder which was washed with ether. The powder was collected by filtration to give benzyloxycarbonyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (2) (3.46 g).

N.M.R. (CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 1.50 (18H, s), 3.98 (2H, s), 4.00–4.70 (4H, m), 5.17 (2H, s), 7.40 (5H, s).

(2) Step 2

Compound (2) →



(3)

Benzyloxycarbonyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (2) (3.30 g) was added to trifluoroacetic acid (15 ml) and the mixture was allowed to stand at ambient temperature for 30 minutes. The mixture was evaporated in vacuo and the residual oil was triturated with ether to give a powder (3.38 g). The solid was dissolved in water (60 ml) and to the solution were added 1 N sulfuric acid and sodium

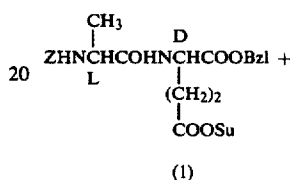
126

periodate (1.78 g) at 0° C. After stirring at the same temperature for an hour, the reaction mixture was treated with sodium bisulfite, concentrated to about 5 ml, adjusted to pH 2 with 1 N sodium hydroxide and put on a column of macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP 20 (400 ml). The fraction eluted with a mixture of water and method (6:4) were combined and evaporated in vacuo to give benzyloxycarbonyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-GlyOH (3) (1.03 g). mp 205°–207° C.

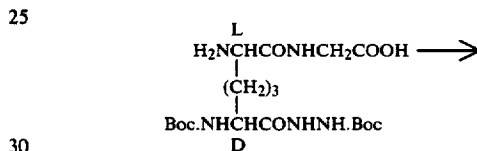
N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.37 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 3.78 (1H, m), 3.93 (2H, s), 4.05–4.40 (3H, m), 5.14 (2H, s), 7.45 (5H, s).

EXAMPLE 32

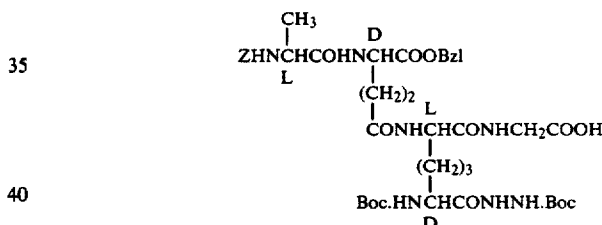
(1) Step 1



(1)



(2)



(3)

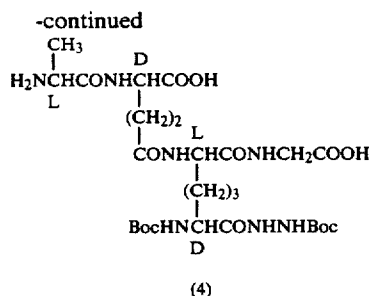
Triethylamine (720 mg) and Z-L-Ala-D-Glu(αSu)oBzl (1) (3.51 g) was added to a solution of Boc-(D)-meso-DAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (2) (3.00 g) in a mixture of dioxane (90 ml) and water (70 ml). The resulting mixture was allowed to stand at ambient temperature for 18 hours, and concentrated to about 50 ml. The concentrate was adjusted to pH 3 with 1 N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate (300 ml) containing methanol (20 ml). The organic layer was washed with brine (100 ml), dried over sodium sulfate and then evaporated in vacuo. The residue was washed with ether and filtered to give Z-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (3) (5.53 g).

N.M.R. (DMSO-d₆), δ(ppm): 1.07 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 3.64–4.48 (6H, m), 5.04 (2H, s), 5.12 (2H, s), 6.56 (1H, d, J=8 Hz), 7.35 (10H, s), 7.95 (1H, d, J=8 Hz), 8.15 (1H, m), 8.35 (1H, d, J=8 Hz), 8.70 (1H, s), 9.56 (1H, s).

(2) Step 2

Compound (3) →

127



A solution of compound (3) (5.26 g) in acetic acid (120 ml) was hydrogenated over 10% palladium black (2.0 g) under an atmospheric pressure of hydrogen. After the catalyst was filtered off and washed with acetic acid, the filtrate and the washings were combined and then evaporated in vacuo. The residual oil was triturated with ether to give L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (4) (3.90 g).

I.R. (Nujol): 3250, 1660 (shoulder), 1515 cm^{-1} .

N.M.R. (D_2O), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.54 (3H, d, $J=8$ Hz), 3.88 (2H, s), 3.95–4.50 (4H, m).

The following compounds were prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Steps 1 and 2 of Example 1, respectively.

EXAMPLE 33

(1) Step 1

Diphenylacetyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

N.M.R. (CD_3OD), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.42 (18H, s), 3.92 (10H, s), 3.83–4.52 (4H, m), 5.08 (1H, s), 7.29 (10H, s).

(2) Step 2

Diphenylacetyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH.

N.M.R. ($\text{D}_2\text{O} + \text{NaHCO}_3$), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.40 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.20–2.25 (10H, m), 3.71 (1H, m), 3.80 (2H, s), 4.10–4.50 (3H, m), 5.17 (1H, s), 7.35 (10H, s).

EXAMPLE 34

(1) Step 1

N-(N-Benzyloxycarbonyl-L-5-oxo-2-pyrrolidinecarboxyl)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

N.M.R. (CD_3OD), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.47 (18H, s), 3.97 (2H, s), 5.27 (2H, s), 7.39 (5H, s).

(2) Step 2

N-(N-Benzyloxycarbonyl-L-5-oxo-2-pyrrolidinecarboxyl)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH [$\alpha]_D = -55.0^\circ$ ($C=0.14$, water).

N.M.R. (D_2O), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.18 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.3–2.8 (14H, m), 3.80 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 3.94 (2H, s), 5.19 (2H, ABq), 7.39 (5H, s).

(3) Step 3

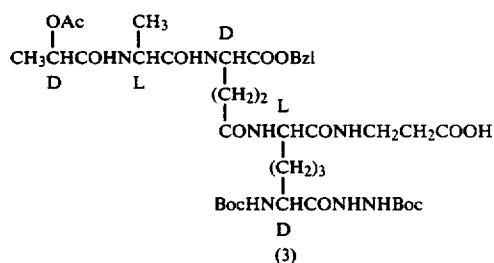
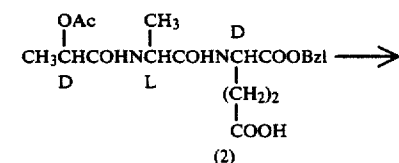
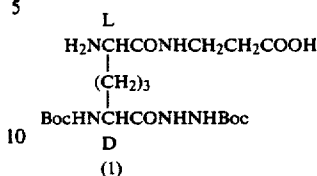
L-5-oxo-2-pyrrolidinecarboxyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH.

N.M.R. (D_2O), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.42 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 3.79 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 3.95 (2H, s), 4.15–4.50 (4H, m).

128

EXAMPLE 35

(1) Step 1

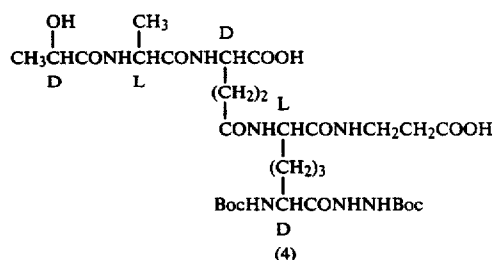


D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-β-AlaOH(3) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 1 of Example 12 from compound (1) and (2).

N.M.R. ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$) $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 0.9–2.6 (16H, m), 1.38 (18H, S), 2.05(3H, S), 2.9–4.7(8H, m), 5.00 (1H, q, $J=7$ Hz), 5.14 (2H, S), 6.5–6.7 (1H, m), 7.39 (5H, S), 7.7–8.4(4H, m), 8.65(1H, broad S), 9.55 (1H, broad S).

(2) Step 2

Compound (3) →



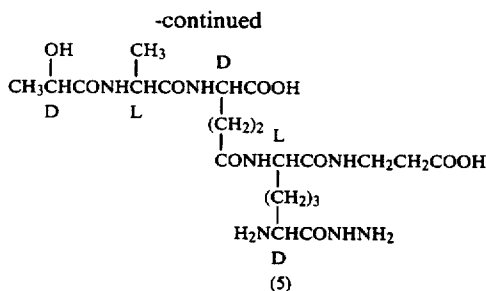
D-Lac-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-β-AlaOH (4) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 2 of Example 12 from compound (3).

N.M.R. (D_2O), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.1–2.8(16H, m), 1.38(18H, S), 2.55(2H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 3.43(2H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 3.8–4.5(5H, m).

(3) Step 3

Compound (4) →

129

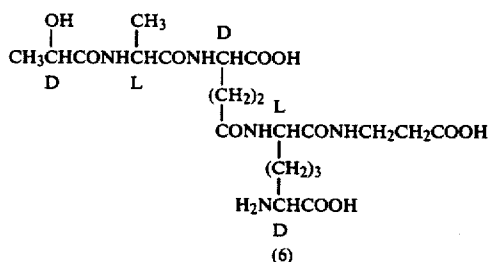


Di-trifluoroacetic acid salt of D-Lac-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNH₂(L)-β-AlaOH (5) was prepared in substantially the same manner the step 3 of Example 12 from compound (4).

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.1-2.8 (10H, m), 1.37(3H, d, J=7Hz), 1.42(3H, d, J=7Hz), 2.58(2H, t, J=6Hz), 3.47(2H, t, J=6Hz), 2.9-4.6(5H, m).

(4) Step 4

Compound (5) →

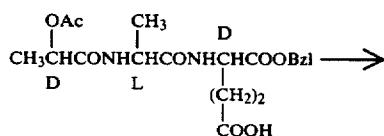
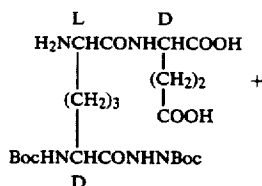


D-Lac-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-β-AlaOH (6) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 4 of Example 12 for compound (5).

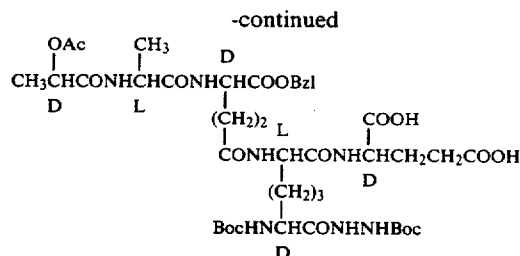
N.M.R.(D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.37(3H, d, J=7Hz), 1.44(3H, d, J=7Hz), 1.2-2.7(10H, m), 2.61(2H, t, J=7 Hz), 3.47 (2H, t, J=7Hz), 3.83(1H, t, J=6Hz), 4.0-4.6(4H,m).

EXAMPLE 36

(1) Step 1



130

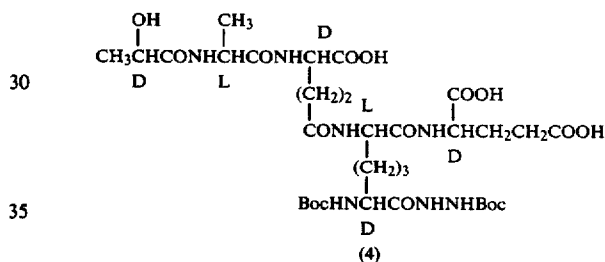


D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-GluOH(3) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 1 of Example 12 from compounds (1) and (2).

N.M.R. (DMSO-d₆), δ(ppm): 0.9-2.5(14H, m), 1.40 (18H, S), 2.07(3H, S), 3.6-4.6(5H, m), 4.99(1H, q, J=7 Hz), 5.15(2H, S), 6.5-6.9(1H, m), 7.39(5H, S), 7.7-9.1(5H, m), 9.55(1H, broad S).

(2) Step 2

25 Compound (3) →

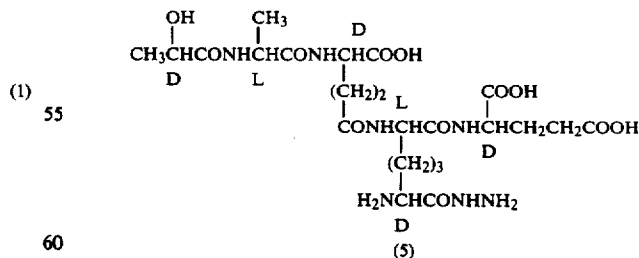


D-Lac(OH)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-GluOH (4) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 2 of Example 12 from compound (3).

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.3-2.8(14H, m), 1.45(18H, S), 3.9-4.6(6H, m).

(3) Step 3

50 Compound (4) →

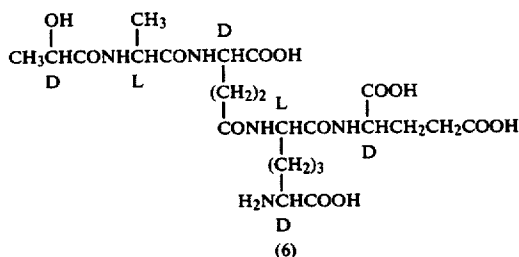


(2) Di-trifluoroacetic acid salt of D-Lac-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNH₂(L)-D-GluOH (5) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 3 of Example 12 from compound (4).

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.1-2.7(m), 1.35(3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.42(3H, d, J=7 Hz), 3.9-4.6(6H, m).

131

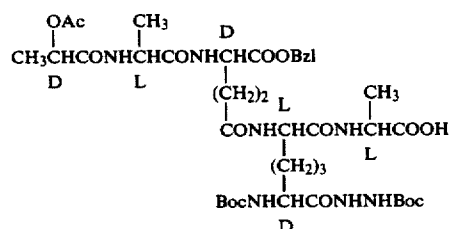
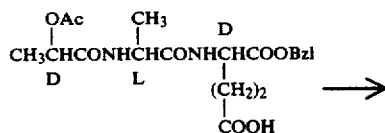
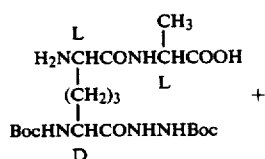
(4) Step 4

Compound (5) $\longrightarrow$ 

D-Lac-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-GulOH (6) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 4 of Example 12 from compound (5).

EXAMPLE 37

(2) Step 1



D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-L-AlaOH (3) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 1 of Example 12 from compounds (1) and (2).

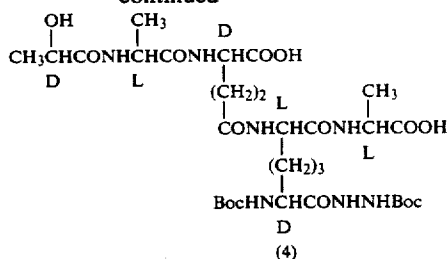
N.M.R.(DMSO- D_6), δ (ppm): 1.0-2.4(19H, m), 1.43(18H, S), 2.10(3H, S), 3.8-4.8(5H, m), 5.04(1H, q, $J=7$ Hz), 5.19(2H, S), 6.5-7.0(1H, m), 7.42(5H, S), 7.7-8.9(5H, m), 9.61(1H, broad S).

(2) Step 2

Compound (3) $\longrightarrow$

132

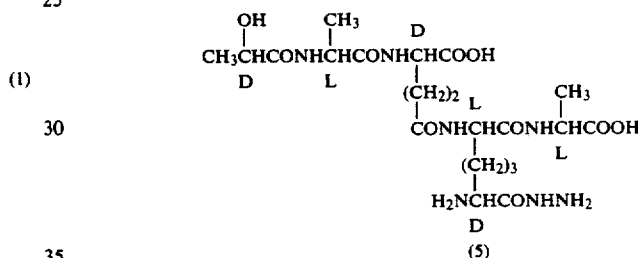
-continued



D-Lac(OH)-L-Ala- γ -Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-L-AlaOH (4) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 2 of Example 12.

N.M.R.(D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.3-2.8(19H, m), 1.45(18H, S), 3.9-4.6(6H, m).

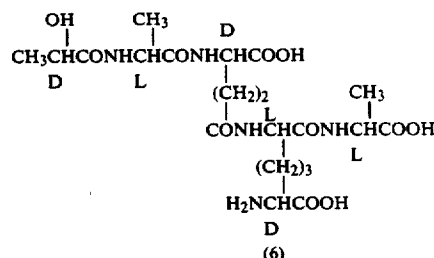
(3) Step 3

Compound (4) $\longrightarrow$ 

Di-trifluoroacetic acid salt of D-Lac(OH)-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNH $_2$ (L)-L-Ala(OH) (5) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 3 of Example 12 from compound (4).

N.M.R.(D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.2-2.7(10H, m), 1.39(3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.44(6H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 3.9-4.7(6H, m).

(4) Step 4

Compound (5) $\longrightarrow$ 

D-Lac(OH)-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-L-Ala(OH) (6) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 4 of Example 12 from compound (5).

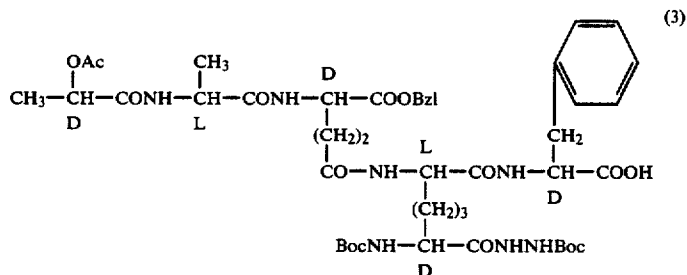
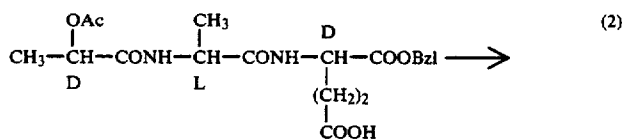
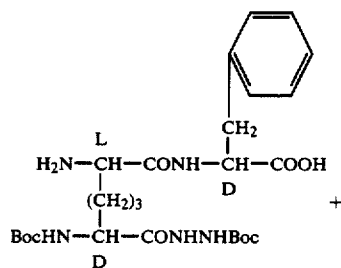
$[\alpha]_D = -41.0$ ($C=0.42$, water).

N.M.R.(D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.37(3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.43(6H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.2-2.5(10H, m), 3.8(1H, t, $J=6$ Hz), 4.1-4.5(5H, m).

133

EXAMPLE 38

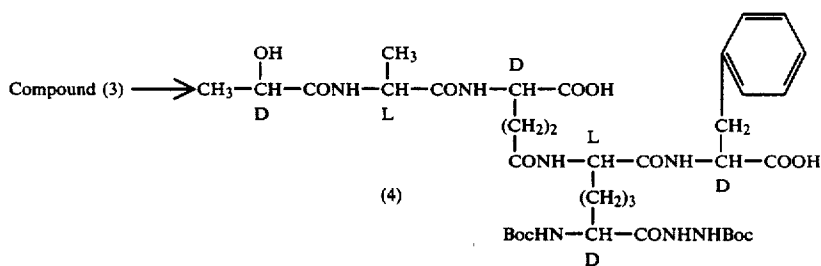
(1) Step 1



40

D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-

(2) Step 2



60

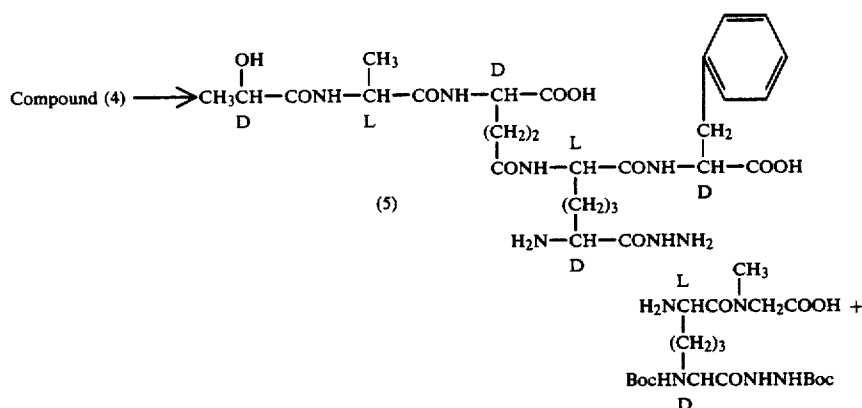
mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-Phe(OH) (3) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 1 of Example 12 from compound (1) and (2).

NMR(DMSO-d₆), δ(ppm): 1.0-2.4 (16H, m), 1.39 (18H, s), 2.05 (3H, s), 2.8-3.2 (2H, m), 3.7-4.7 (5H, m), 4.99 (1H, q, J=7 Hz), 5.16 (2H, s), 6.65 (1H, broad d,

D-Lac(OH)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-PheOH (4) was prepared in substantially the same manner as step 2 of Example 12 from compound (3).

I.R. (Nujol): 3270, 1720 (shoulder), 1645 (broad), 1520 (broad) cm⁻¹.

(3) Step 3

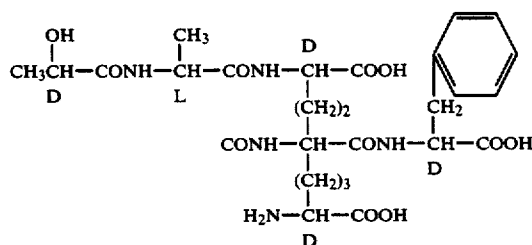


20

Di-trifluoroacetic acid salt of D-Lac(OH)-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNH₂-(L)-D-PheOH (5) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 3 of Example 12 from compound (4).

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ (ppm): 1.1-2.7 (10 H, m), 1.46 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.50 (3H, d, J=7Hz), 2.8-3.5 (2H, m), 3.9-4.7 (6H, m), 7.41 (5H, s).

(4) Step 4

Compound (5) $\longrightarrow$ 

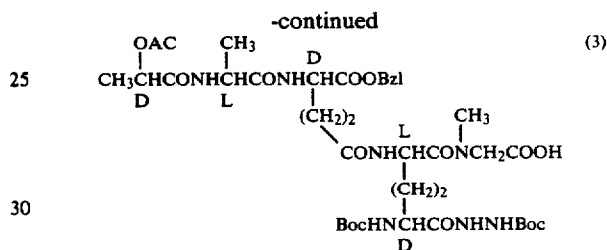
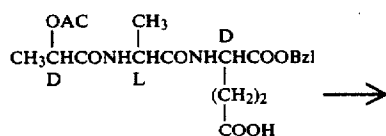
D-Lac(OH)-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-PheOH (6) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 4 of Example 12 from compound (5).

$[\alpha]_D = -28.6^\circ$ (c=0.511 water).

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ (ppm): 1.1-2.5 (10H, m), 1.36 (3H, d, J=7 Hz); 1.42 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 3.14 (2H), 4.0-4.5 (5H, m), 7.1-7.5 (5H, m).

EXAMPLE 39

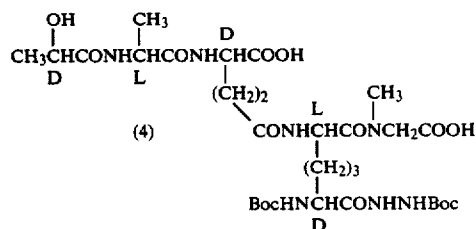
(1) Step 1



D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -oBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-SarOH (3) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 1 of Example 12 from compounds (1) and (2).

N.M.R. (DMSO-d₆), δ (ppm): 1.0-2.4 (16H, m), 1.35 (18H, s), 2.03 (3H, s), 2.80 and 3.05 (3H, a pair of singlets), 3.6-4.5 (6H, m), 4.98 (1H, q, J=7 Hz), 5.13 (2H, s), 6.5-7.0 (1H, m), 7.35 (5H, s), 7.7-9.0 (4H, m).

(2) Step 2

45 Compound (3) $\longrightarrow$ 

D-Lac(OH)-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-Sar OH (4) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 2 of Example 12 from compound 3.

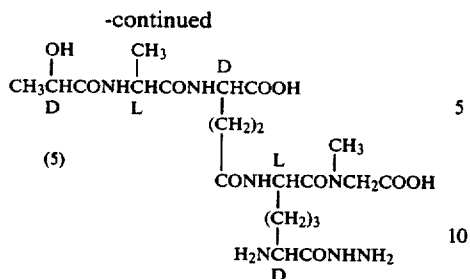
N.M.R. (D₂), δ (ppm): 1.1-2.5 (16H, m), 1.41 (9H, s), 1.43 (9H, s), 2.93 and 3.18 (3H, a pair of singlets), 3.7-4.5 (7H, m).

(3) Step 3

65

Compound (4) $\longrightarrow$

137

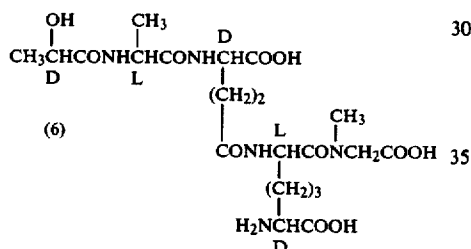


Di-trifluoroacetic acid salt of D-Lac(OH)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNH₂(L)-Sar OH (5) was prepared in substantially the same manner as step 3 of Example 12 from Compound (4).

N.M.R. (D₂O), (ppm): 1.0–2.6 (10H, m), 1.35 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.41 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 2.93 and 3.17 (3H, a pair of singlets), 3.8–4.6 (7H, m).

(4) Step 4

Compound (5) →



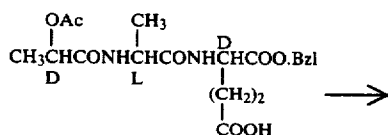
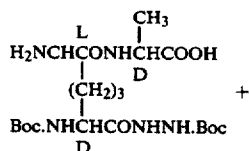
D-Lac(OH)-L-Ala-γ-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-Sar OH (6) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 4 of example 12 from compound (5).

[α]_D = -37.6° (C=0.402, water).

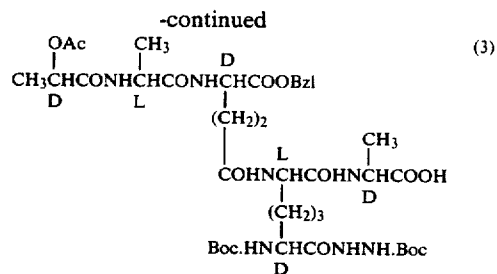
N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.1–2.5 (10H, m), 1.35 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.41 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 2.96 and 3.20 (3H, a pair of singlet), 3.70–4.0 (1H, m), 4.0–4.6 (6H, m).

EXAMPLE 40

(1) Step 1



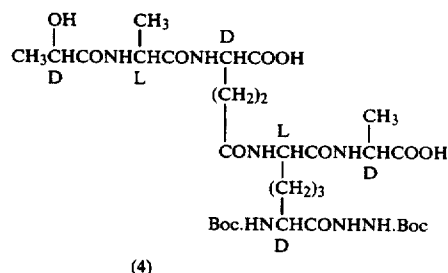
138



D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso DAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH (3) was prepared in substantially the same manner as step 1 of Example 12 from compounds (1) and (2).

NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ(ppm): 0.9–2.6 (37H, m), 2.10 (3H, s), 3.7–4.7 (5H, m), 5.01 (1H, q, J=7 Hz), 5.19 (2H, s), 6.6–7.0 (1H, m), 7.42 (5H, s), 7.7–8.9 (5H, m), 9.60 (1H, broad s).

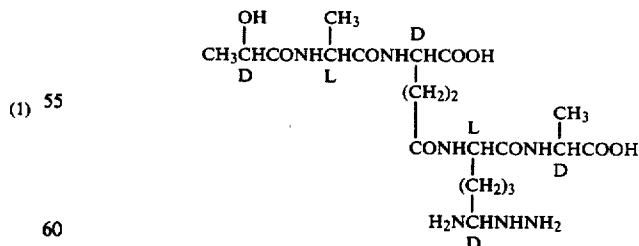
(2) Step 2

25
Compound (3) →

D-Lac(OH)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso DAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH (4) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 2 of Example 12 from compound (3).

NMR(D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.3–2.7 (19H, m), 1.48 (18H, s), 3.9–4.7 (6H, m).

(3) Step 3

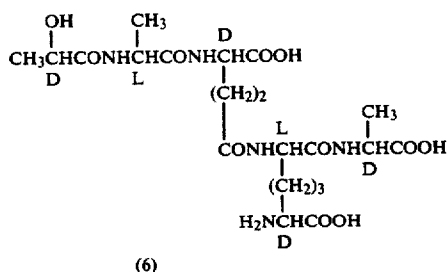
50
Compound (4) →

(2) Di-trifluoroacetic acid salt of D-Lac(OH)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-meso DAP-(D)-NHNH₂(L)-D-AlaOH (5) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 3 of Example 12 from compound (4).

NMR(D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.36 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.41 (6H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.1–2.7 (10H, m), 3.9–4.7 (6H, m).

139

(4) Step 4

Compound (5) $\longrightarrow$ 

(6)

D-Lac(OH)-L-Ala- δ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH (6) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 4 of Example 12.

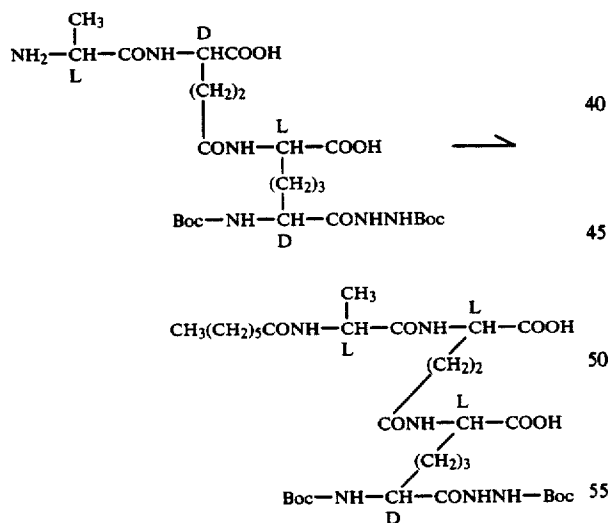
$[\alpha]_D = -17.4^\circ$ (C=0.305, water).

NMR(D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.38 (3H,d,J=7 Hz), 1.41 (3H,d,J=7 Hz), 1.44 (3H,d,J=7 Hz), 1.2-2.6 (10H, m), 3.84 (1H,t,J=6 Hz), 4.1-4.6 (5H, m).

The following compounds were prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Steps 1 and 2 of Example 1, respectively.

EXAMPLE 41

(1) Step 1



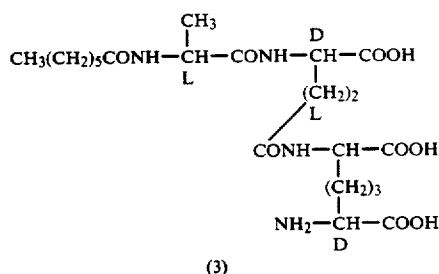
N.M.R. (DMSO-d_6), δ (ppm): 0.80-2.40 (44H, m), 3.67-4.67 (4H, m), 6.70 (1H, d, J=7 Hz), 7.83 (1H, d, J=7 Hz), 8.03 (2H, d, J=7 Hz), 8.60 (1H, s), 9.53 (1H, s).

(2) Step 2

Compound (2) $\longrightarrow$

140

-continued

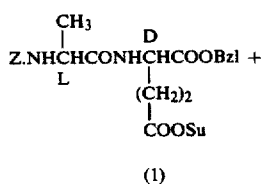


(3)

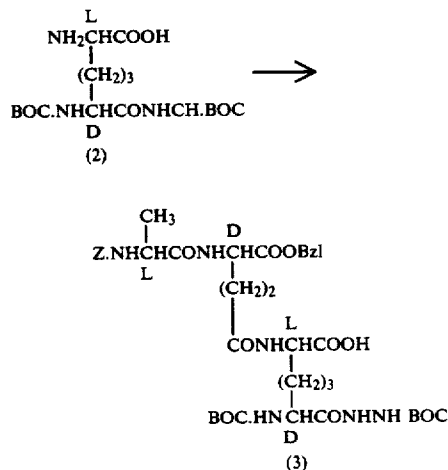
N.M.R. (D_2O), δ (ppm): 0.84 (3H, t, J=7 Hz), 1.36 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.0-2.60 (20 H, m), 3.80 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 4.10-4.52 (3H, m).

EXAMPLE 42

Step 1



(1)



(3)

The compound (3) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 1 of Example 12.

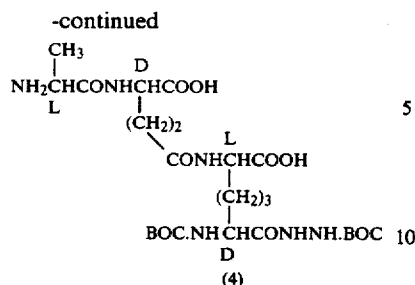
N.M.R. (DMSO-d_6), δ (ppm): 1.00-2.40 (10H, m), 1.24 (3H, t, J=7 Hz), 1.40 (18H, s), 3.80-4.48 (4H, m), 5.04 (2H, s), 5.12 (2H, s), 6.74 (1H, d, J=7 Hz), 7.36 (10H, s), 8.04 (1H, d, J=7 Hz), 8.32 (1H, d, J=7 Hz), 8.68 (1H, broad s), 9.60 (1H, s).

(2) Step 2

65

Compound (3) $\xrightarrow{\text{AcOH}}$

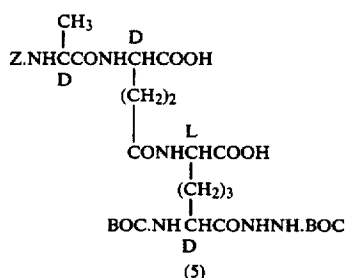
141



The compound (4) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 2 of Example 12.

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ (ppm): 1.36–2.66 (13H, m), 1.43 (18H, s), 3.83–4.43 (4H, m).

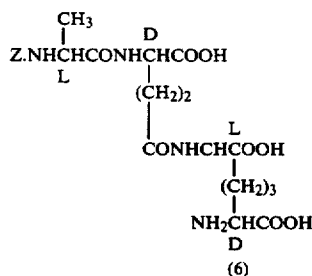
(3) Step 3

Compound (4) $\longrightarrow$ 

The compound (5) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 1 of Example 1.

N.M.R. (DMSO-d₆), δ (ppm): 1.25 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.40 (18H, s), 1.30–2.40 (10H, m), 3.83–4.50 (4H, m), 5.06 (2H, s), 6.76 (1H, d, J=7 Hz), 7.38 (5H, s), 8.13 (2H, d, J=7 Hz), 8.70 (1H, broad s), 9.60 (1H, s).

(4) Step 4

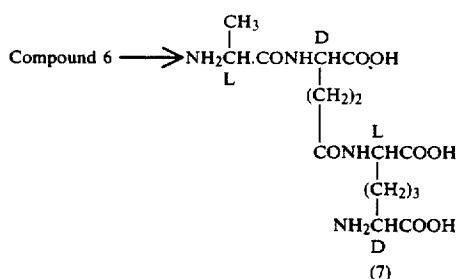
Compound (5) $\longrightarrow$ 

The compound (6) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the step 4 of Example 12.

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ (ppm): 1.34 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.10–2.43 (10H, m), 3.71 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 3.91–4.30 (3H, m), 5.10 (2H, s), 7.40 (5H, s).

142

(5) Step 5



The compound (7) was prepared in substantially the same manner as the Step 2 of Example 11.

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ (ppm): 1.52 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.20–2.52 (10H, m), 3.76 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 4.00–4.40 (3H, m).

The following compounds were prepared in substantially the same manner as step 1 to 4 of Example 12, respectively.

EXAMPLE 43

(1) Step 1

D-Lac (oAc)-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu (α -oBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc.

N.M.R. (DMSO-D₆), δ (ppm): 1.1–2.5 (16H, m), 1.38 (18H, s), 2.04 (3H, s), 3.8–4.7 (4H, m), 4.95 (1H, q, J=7 Hz), 5.10 (2H, s), 7.30 (5H, s), 8.08 (2H, broad t, J=8 Hz).

(2) Step 2

D-Lac(OH)-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc.

I.R. (Nujol): 1720, 1650, 1525 cm⁻¹.

(3) Step 3

D-Lac(OH)-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNH₂ (trifluoroacetic acid salt).

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ (ppm): 1.40 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.45 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.2–2.7 (10H, m), 4.0–4.7 (5H, m).

(4) Step 4

D-Lac(OH)-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP. $[\alpha]_D = -21.3^\circ$ (0.258, water).

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ (ppm): 1.1–2.5 (10H, m), 1.35 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.42 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 3.88 (1H, t, J=6 Hz), 4.0–4.5 (4H, m).

EXAMPLE 44

(1) Step 1

Benzoyloxycarbonyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH.

I.R. (Nujol): 3290, 1720, 1650, 1630, 1530 cm⁻¹.

N.M.R. (CD₃OD), δ (ppm): 1.39 (18H, s), 3.75–4.55 (5H, m), 5.06 (2H, s), 5.12 (2H, s), 7.23 (10H, s).

(2) Step 2

L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNH-Boc-(L)-AlaOH

m.p. 174° (dec).

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1655, 1525 cm⁻¹.

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ (ppm): 1.45 (18H, s), 3.98–4.60 (5H, m).

(3) Step 3

Heptanoyl L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1720, (shoulder), 1650 cm⁻¹.
N.M.R. (DMSO-d₆), δ(ppm): 0.88 (3H, t, J=7 Hz), 1.0–2.4 (44H, m), 4.0–4.6 (5H, m).

(4) Step 4

Heptanoyl-L-Ala-δ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH.

[α]_D = -26.0° (c=0.2, water).
I.R. (Nujol): 3250, 1720, 1640 cm⁻¹.
N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 0.86 (3H, t, J=7 Hz), 1.0–2.5 (26H, m), 3.84 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 4.2–4.56 (4H, m).

EXAMPLE 45

(1) Step 1

Acetoxyacetyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH.

I.R. (Nujol): 3280, 1720, 1650, 1520 cm⁻¹.
N.M.R. (CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 1.47 (18H, s), 2.14 (3H, s), 4.07–4.70 (5H, m), 4.63 (2H, s).

(2) Step 2

Glycolyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH.

I.R. (Nujol): 3280, 1720, 1630, 1530 cm⁻¹.
N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.41, (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.43 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 3.83 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 4.14 (2H, s), 4.2–4.55 (4H, m).

EXAMPLE 46

(1) Step 1

O-Acetyl-D-Mandelyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH.

I.R. (Nujol): 3280, 1720, 1650, 1520 cm⁻¹.
N.M.R. (CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 1.39 (18H, s), 2.15 (3H, s), 3.9–4.6 (5H, m), 5.87 (1H, s), 7.38 (5H, s).

(2) Step 2

D-Mandelyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH.

I.R. (Nujol): 3270, 1715, 1640, 1520 cm⁻¹.
N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.35 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.42 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 3.80 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 4.1–4.5 (4H, m), 5.18 (1H, s), 7.32 (5H, s).

EXAMPLE 47

(1) Step 1

Phenylacetyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH.

I.R. (Nujol): 3280, 1720, (shoulder), 1650, 1520 cm⁻¹.
N.M.R. (CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 1.40 (18H, s), 3.59 (2H, s), 3.94–4.50 (5H, m), 7.27 (5H, s).

(2) Step 2

Phenylacetyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH.

I.R. (Nujol): 3250, 1715, 1640, 1530 cm⁻¹.
N.M.R. (D₂O), γ(ppm): 1.36 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.40 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 3.65 (2H, s), 3.80 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 4.20–4.55 (4H, m), 7.36 (5H, s).

EXAMPLE 48

(1) Step 1

Benzoyloxycarbonyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH.

I.R. (Nujol): 3270, 1715 (shoulder), 1650, 1520 cm⁻¹.
N.M.R. (CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 1.41 (18H, s), 3.95–4.50 (5H, m), 5.07 (2H, s), 7.28 (5H, s).

(2) Step 2

Benzoyloxycarbonyl-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH.

[α]_D = -57.4° (C=0.25, water).
I.R. (Nujol): 3250, 1700 (shoulder), 1640, 1520 cm⁻¹.
N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.40 (6H, d, J=8 Hz), 3.86 (1H, t, J=6 Hz), 4.07–4.50 (4H, m), 5.10 (2H, s), 7.40 (5H, s).

EXAMPLE 49

(1) Step 1

Benzoyloxycarbonyl-γ-D-Glu(α-OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH.

I.R. (Nujol): 3260, 1730–1630 (broad) cm⁻¹.
N.M.R. (DMSO-d₆), δ(ppm): 1.20–2.40 (10H, m), 1.40 (18H, s), 3.76 (2H, d, J=7 Hz), 4.0–4.5 (3H, m) 5.08 (2H, s), 5.15 (2H, s), 7.40 (10H, s).

(2) Step 2

γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

I.R. (Nujol): 3250 (broad), 1720–1620, (broad) cm⁻¹.
N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.20–2.70 (28H, m), 3.83 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 3.94 (2H, s), 4.04–4.5 (2H, m).

(3) Step 3

Heptanoyl-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

I.R. (Nujol): 3250, 1720 (shoulder), 1650 (broad) cm⁻¹.
N.M.R. (DMSO-d₆), δ(ppm): 0.86 (3H, t, J=7 Hz), 1.0–2.4 (38H, m), 3.70 (2H, d, J=7 Hz), 4.0–4.5 (3H, m).

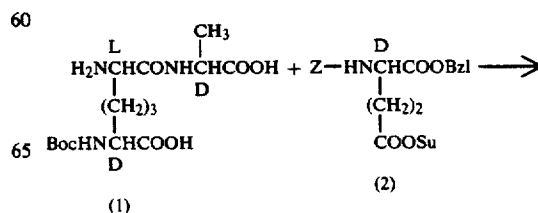
(4) Step 4

Heptanoyl-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH.

[α]_D = -18.0° (c=0.2, water).
I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1720, 1640 (broad) cm⁻¹.
N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 0.84 (3H, t, J=7 Hz), 1.0–2.60 (20H, m), 3.80 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 3.96 (2H, s), 4.20–4.48 (2H, m).

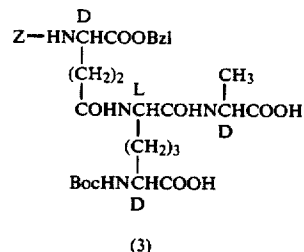
EXAMPLE 50

(1) Step 1



145

-continued

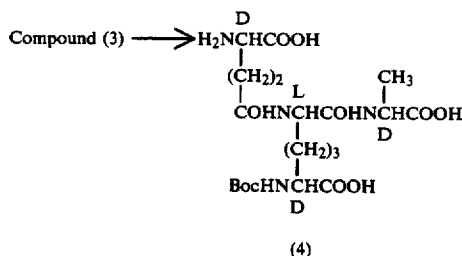


To a mixture of Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-AlaOH (1) (361 mg.) and triethylamine (202 mg.) in 50% aqueous dioxane (20 ml.) was added Z-D-Glu(OSu)OBzl (2) (440 mg.) and the reaction mixture was concentrated and washed with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was acidified with diluted hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated to give a foamy residue, which was pulverized with isopropyl ether and collected by filtration to give a white powder (520 mg.) of Z-γ-D-Glu(α-OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-AlaOH (3).

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1720, 1690, 1640, 1530 cm^{-1} .

N.M.R. ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$), δ (ppm): 1.38 (9H, s), 1.00~2.66 (13H, m), 3.66~4.50 (4H, m), 5.07 (2H, s), 5.15 (2H, s), 7.38 (10H, s).

(2) Step 2

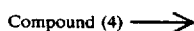


Z-γ-D-Glu(α-OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH (3) (502 mg) was dissolved in acetic acid (20 ml) and hydrogenated over 10% palladium-charcoal (100 mg). The catalyst was removed by filtration and the filtrate was evaporated to give an oil, to which toluene was added and evaporated to give a pasty residue. This residue was dissolved in water and submitted to a column of HP-20 (50 ml), a macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin. The column was eluted successively with water and methanol-water (1:4). Evaporation of the latter fractions gave a white foam, which was dissolved in water and lyophilized to give a white powder (290 mg) of γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH (4).

I.R. (Nujol): 3250, 1720~1630 (broad), 1530 cm^{-1}

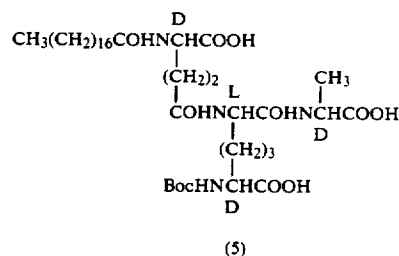
N.M.R. (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.48 (9H, s), 1.10~2.66 (13H, m), 3.77 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 4.00~4.66 (3H, m).

(3) Step 3



146

-continued

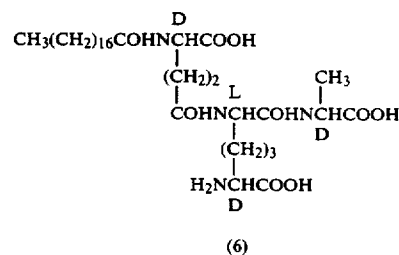


To a mixture of γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH (4) (280 mg) and triethylamine (175 mg) in methanol (5 ml) was added a solution of stearic anhydride (478 mg) in chloroform (10 ml) and the mixture was kept for 3 days at room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate was washed successively with diluted hydrochloric acid and water, dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated to give a foamy residue, which was pulverized with ether and collected to give a white powder (310 mg) of stearoyl-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH (5).

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1710, 1695, 1660, 1620 (broad), 1540 cm^{-1} .

N.M.R. (CD_3OD), δ (ppm): 0.90 (3H, t, $J=5$ Hz), 1.33 (30H, s), 1.44 (9H, s), 1.16~2.66 (15H, m), 3.66~4.66 (4H, m).

(4) Step 4



Stearoyl-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH (5) (308 mg) was added to trifluoroacetic acid (5 ml) and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour at room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated and triturated with ether to give white powder, which was washed with ether and methanol to give stearoyl-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH (6) (230 mg), as a white powder.

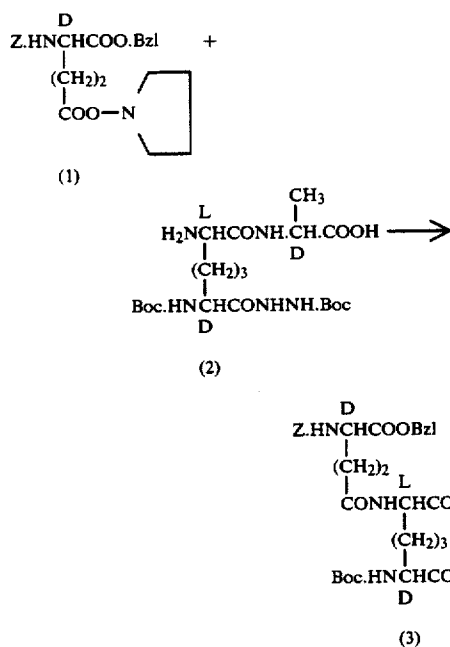
I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1730, 1640, 1530 cm^{-1} .

N.M.R. ($\text{D}_2\text{O} + \text{NaOD}$), δ (ppm): 0.86 (3H, t, $J=6$ Hz), 1.30 (30H, m), 1.00~2.66 (15H, m), 3.21 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 4.00~4.20 (3H, m).

147

EXAMPLE 51

(1) Step 1

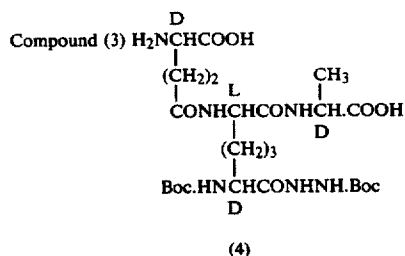


Compound (2) (4.75 g) was dissolved in a mixture of dioxane (30 ml) and water (30 ml) containing triethylamine (1.01 g). To this solution, there was added compound (1) (4.4 g) and the resulting solution was left for 1 day at ambient temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the concentrates were subjected to extraction with ethylacetate. The organic layer was washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate (MgSO_4) and then evaporated to give a foamy residue, which were pulverized with diisopropylether and collected by filtration to give compound (3) (5.77 g) as white powder.

I.R. (Nujol): 3270, 1730–1620 (broad).

N.M.R. (DMSO-d_6), δ (ppm): 1.37 (18H, s), 1.18–2.33 (13H, m), 3.66–3.84 (4H, m), 5.06 (2H, s), 5.16 (2H, s), 7.36 (10H, s).

(2) Step 2



Compound (3) (3.88 g) was dissolved in acetic acid (100 ml) and hydrogenated over palladium-charcoal (300 mg). Catalyst, i.e. palladium-charcoal was removed by filtration and the filtrate was evaporated under reduced pressure to give an oily paste, to which toluene was added. The resulting solution was evaporated to give white powder residues, which were

148

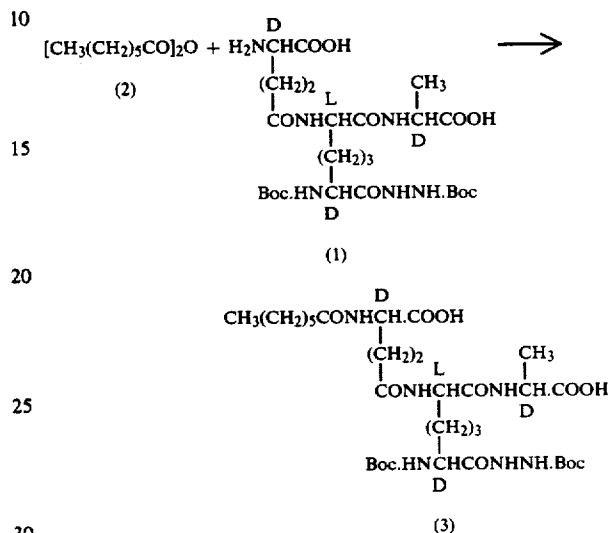
washed with diisopropylether and collected by filtration to give compound (4) (2.10 g) as white powder.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300–2300 (broad), 1720–1620 (broad).

N.M.R. (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.47 (18H, s), 1.33–2.66 (13H, m), 3.66–4.50 (4H, m).

EXAMPLE 52

(1) Step 1

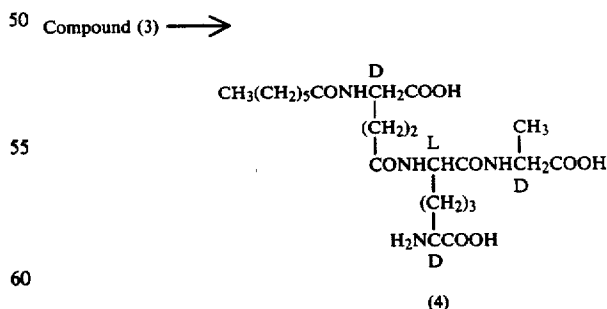


Compound (1) (596 mg) was dissolved in methanol (30 ml), and to this solution, there were added triethylamine (202 mg) and heptanoic anhydride (2) (363 mg) successively. The reaction mixture was kept for 3 days at ambient temperature, and then concentrated. The concentrates were subjected to extraction with ethylacetate. The organic layer was washed with 10% aqueous hydrochloric acid and water, and dried over magnesium sulfate (MgSO_4) and then evaporated to give a foamy residue, which was pulverized with ether and collected by filtration to give compound (3) (470 mg) as white powder.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1740–1730 (broad).

N.M.R. (DMSO-d_6), δ (ppm): 0.89 (3H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 1.00–2.40 (23H, m), 3.66–4.66 (4H, m).

(2) Step 2



Compound (3) (430 mg) was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (10 ml) and the solution was kept for 30 minutes at ambient temperature. The solution was evaporated to give an oily paste, which was dissolved in 0.1 N-sulfuric acid (13 ml) and water (8 ml) and cooled in an ice-bath. To this solution, there was added aqueous

NaIO₄ (278 mg in 5 ml water) under stirring, and the stirring was continued for 1 hour.

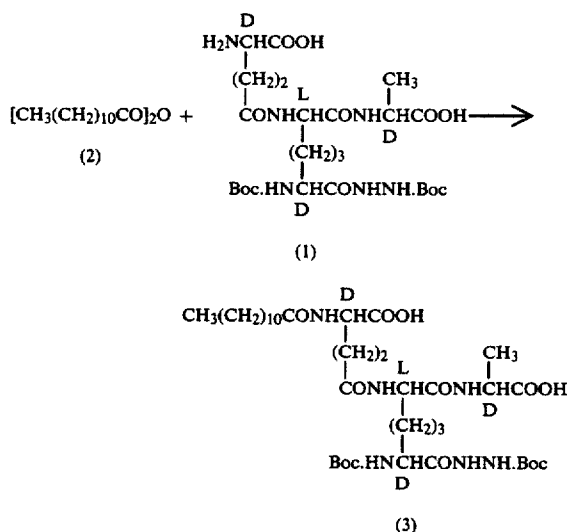
The resulting reaction mixture was treated with aqueous NaHSO₃ solution until purple color of the solution disappeared. The pH of the solution was made neutral by addition of aqueous NaHCO₃ solution and the whole volume of the solution was concentrated. The pH of the solution was adjusted again to 2.0 and the whole solution was submitted to column of HP-20 resin (50 ml). The column was eluted with water and then methanol-water (1:2). The latter fractions were evaporated gave a white foamy substance, which was dissolved in water and then the solution was lyophilized to give compound (4) (240 mg) as white powder.

I.R. (Nujol): 3250, 1740, 1666-1640 (broad).

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 0.82 (3H, t, J=6 Hz), 1.00-2.60 (20H, m), 1.35 (3H, d, J=8 Hz), 3.81 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 4.40-4.80 (3H, m).

EXAMPLES 53

(1) Step 1

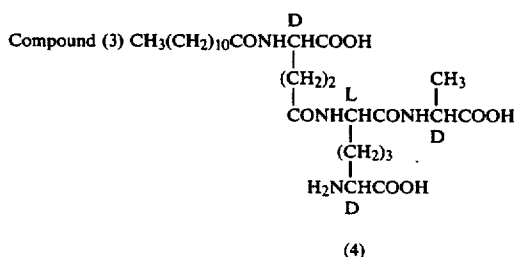


Compound (1) (596 mg) was dissolved in methanol (30 ml) and chloroform (5 ml), and to this solution, there were added triethylamine (202 mg) and lauric anhydride (2) (609 mg) successively. The reaction mixture was treated substantially in the same manner as the Step 1 of Example 53 to give compound (3) (570 mg) as white powder.

I.R. (Nujol): 3250, 1725-1610 (broad).

N.M.R. (DMSO-d₆), δ(ppm): 0.84 (3H, t, J=7 Hz), 1.30 (18H, s), 1.00-2.40 (33H, m), 3.80-4.40 (3H, m).

(2) Step 2



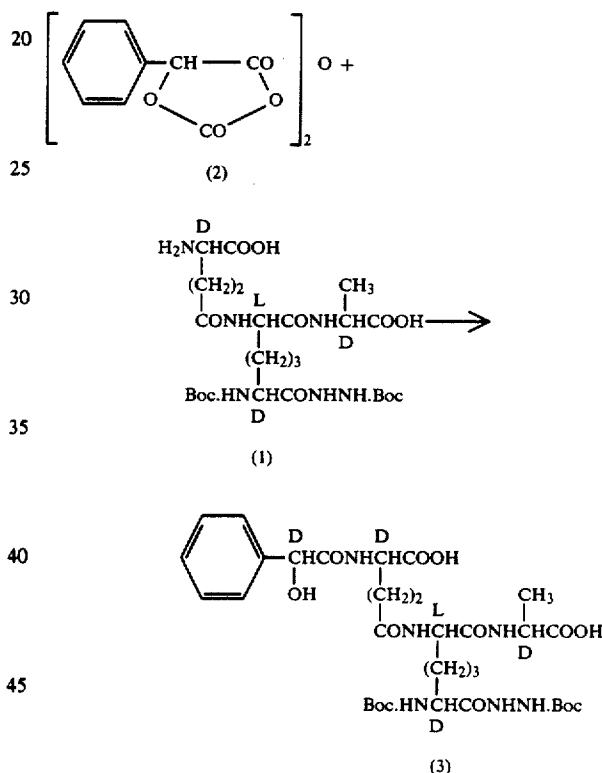
Compound (3) (510 mg) was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (10 ml) and the solution was kept for 30 minutes at ambient temperature. Hereafter, the reaction mixture was treated substantially in the same manner as the Step 2 of Example 53 to give compound (4) (250 mg) as white powder.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1720, 1660-1620 (broad).

N.M.R. (CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 0.90 (3H, t, J=7 Hz), 1.00-2.60 (33H, m), 3.75 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 4.20-4.80 (3H, m).

EXAMPLE 54

(1) Step 1



Compound (1) (596 mg) was dissolved in methanol (30 ml), and to this solution, there were added triethylamine (202 mg) and mandelic anhydride (2) (267 mg) successively. The reaction mixture was treated substantially in the same manner as the Step 1 of Example 53 to give Compound (3) (330 mg) as white powder.

IR(Nujol): 3300, 1730-1640 (broad).

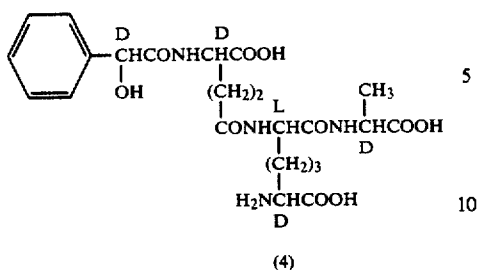
NMR (DMSO-d₆), δppm: 1.39 (18H, s), 1.16-2.33 (13H, m), 3.70-4.50 (4H, m), 5.00 (1H, broad s), 7.40 (5H, broad s).

(2) Step 2

Compound (3) →

151

-continued



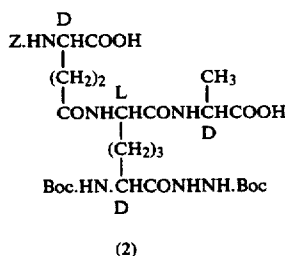
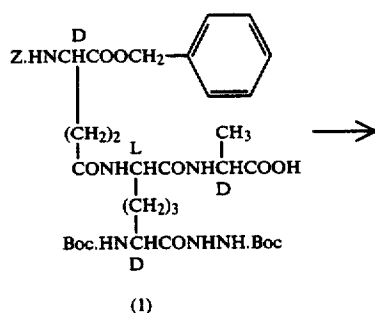
Compound (3) (479 mg) was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (10 ml) and the solution was kept for 30 minutes at ambient temperature. Hereafter, the reaction mixture was treated substantially in the same manner as the Step 2 of Example 53 to give Compound (4) (190 mg) as white powder.

IR(Nujol): 3250, 1720, 1660-1620 (broad).

NMR(D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.36 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.20-2.60 (10H, m), 3.80 (1H, t, J=6 Hz), 4.10-4.60 (3H, m), 5.20 (1H, s), 7.42 (5H, s).

EXAMPLE 55

(1) Step 1



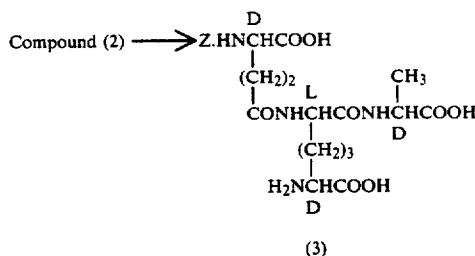
Compound (1) (1.51 g) was dissolved in a mixture of methanol (15 ml) and water (10 ml). To this solution, there was added 1N-NaOH solution (4.0 ml) and the solution was kept for 2 hours at ambient temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated after adjusting the pH of the solution to 7.0. The residual aqueous solution was diluted with water. After extraction with ether, aqueous layer was acidified to pH 2 with 1N-HCl to separate an oily product, which was extracted with ethylacetate. The organic layer was washed with H₂O and dried over MgSO₄. Evaporation of the solvent gave a white foam, which was pulverized with diisopropyl ether to give Compound (2) (1.16 g) as white powder.

I.R. (Nujol): 3250, 1740-1620 (broad).

N.M.R. (DMSO-d₆), δ(ppm): 1.36 (18H, s), 1.00-2.40 (13H, m), 3.66-4.50 (4H, m), 5.03 (2H, s), 7.36 (5H, s).

152

(2) Step 2

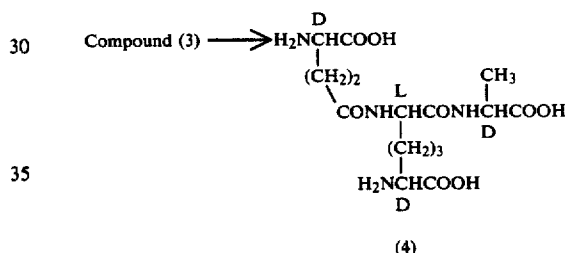


Compound (2) (1.03 g.) was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (10 ml.) and the solution was kept for 30 minutes at ambient temperature. Hereafter, the reaction mixture was treated substantially in the same manner as the Step 2 of Example 2 to give Compound (3) (0.6 g.) as white powder.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1700, 1660-1620 (broad).

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm) 1.36 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.20-2.60 (10H, m), 3.76 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 3.96-4.50 (3H, m), 5.08 (2H, s), 7.40 (5H, s).

(3) Step 3



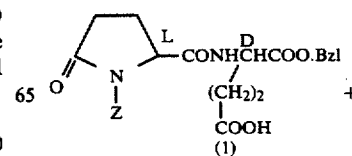
Compound (3) (374 mg.) was dissolved in acetic acid (30 ml.) and hydrogenated over palladium-charcoal (100 mg.). Catalyst was removed by filtration and the filtrate was evaporated under reduced pressure to give an oily paste, to which toluene was added. Evaporation of toluene gave white powder residue. The residue was dissolved in water and submitted to column of HP-20 resin (100 ml.). The column was eluted with water. Evaporation of the fractions containing the product was evaporated to give a pasty residue, which was dissolved in H₂O and the solution was lyophilized to give Compound (4) (200 mg.) as white powder.

I.R. (Nujol): 3250-2500 (broad) 1680-1500 (broad).

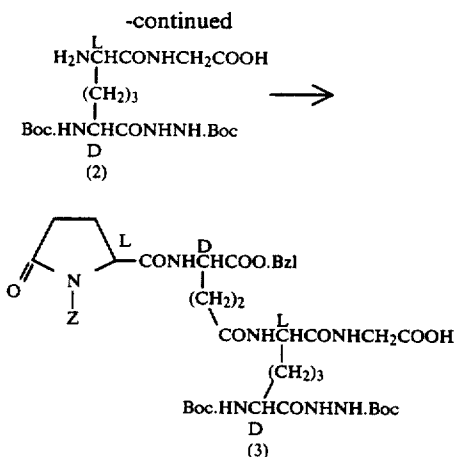
N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.36 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.20-2.60 (10H, m), 3.75 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 3.80 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 4.00-4.50 (2H, m).

EXAMPLE 56

(1) Step 1



153

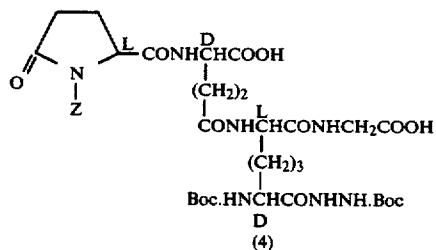


Compound (1) was dissolved in dichloromethane (20 ml.) and N-methyl-morpholine (308 mg.) was added. This solution was cooled in a dry ice - acetone bath ($-17^{\circ} \sim -19^{\circ} \text{C.}$) under stirring, and to the solution, isobutylchlorocarbonate (417 mg.) was added. The reaction mixture was allowed to react for 20 minutes at the same temperature. To the resulting reaction mixture was added to the solution of Compound (2) (1.41 g.) in a mixture of dichloromethane (40 ml.) and N,N-dimethylformamide (4 ml) containing bis (trimethylsilyl) acetamide (3 ml.). The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 hours at $-18^{\circ} \text{C.} \sim -10^{\circ} \text{C.}$ and concentrated under reduced pressure to give an oily residue, which was dissolved in ethylacetate (100 ml.) and washed with 0.5 N-HCl. The organic layer was washed with brine and dried over MgSO_4 . Evaporation of the solvent gave a white foam which was thoroughly washed with ether to afford Compound (3) (2.42 g.) as white powder, mp. $145^{\circ} \sim 149^{\circ} \text{C.}$ (decomp.)

I.R. (Nujol): 3280. 1780. 1720. 1650.

N.M.R. (CD_3OD), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 3.93 (2H, s), 5.18 (4H, s), 7.38 (10H, s).

(2) Step 2

Compound (3) $\longrightarrow$ 

To a solution of Compound (3) (2.36 g.) in methanol (25 ml.), there was added 1N-NaOH (5.6 ml.) and the mixture was stirred for 5 hours at ambient temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuum, and to the residue, there was added 1N-HCl (6 ml.) and the solution was subjected to extraction with ethylacetate. The organic layer was washed with 0.5 N-HCl (30 ml.), dried over MgSO_4 and evaporated in vacuum. The residual oil was treated with diethyl ether to give Compound (4) (1.86 g.) as white powder.

154

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1680 (broad), 1625.

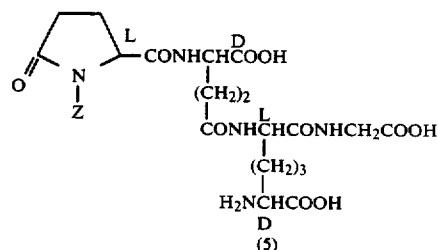
N.M.R. (CD_3OD), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.46 (18H, s), 3.95 (2H, s), 4.00 $\sim$ 4.50 (4H, m), 5.13 (2H, s), 7.45 (5H, s).

5

(3) Step 3

Compound (4) $\longrightarrow$

10



15

Compound (4) (1.8 g.) was added to trifluoroacetic acid (10 ml.) and the mixture was stood for 100 minutes at ambient temperature. The reaction mixture was evaporated and the residue was triturated with ethyl ether to give a solid. The solid was dissolved in water (45 ml). To this solution, was added 1N- H_2SO_4 (4.4 ml.) and NaIO_4 (930 mg.) at 0°C. After stirring for 2 hours at 0°C. , the reaction mixture was treated with aqueous NaHSO_3 , concentrated to about 10 ml, adjusted to pH 2 with 1N-NaOH and submitted to column of HP-20 resin (200 ml.). The column was eluted with water-methanol (3:2) and the fractions were combined and evaporated, and then the residue was lyophilized to give Compound (5) (680 mg.).

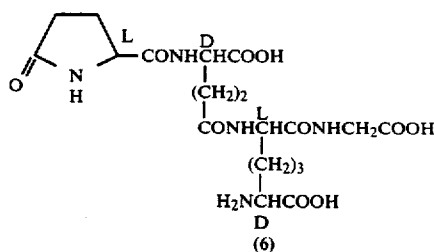
I.R. (Nujol): 3270, 1700, 1640, 1520.

N.M.R. (D_2O), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.3 $\sim$ 2.6 (14H, m), 3.83 (1H, t, $J=7 \text{ Hz}$), 3.95 (2H, s), 4.05 $\sim$ 4.50 (3H, m), 5.11 (2H, s), 7.40 (5H, s).

40

(4) Step 4

45

Compound (5) $\longrightarrow$ 

50

55

A solution of Compound (5) (550 ml.) in water (6 ml.) was hydrogenated over 10% palladium-carbon (180 mg.) under an atmospheric pressure of hydrogen gas. After the catalyst was filtered off, the filtrate was evaporated in vacuum and lyophilized to give Compound (5) (450 mg.).

I.R. (Nujol): 3250, 1720 (shoulder), 1630, 1530.

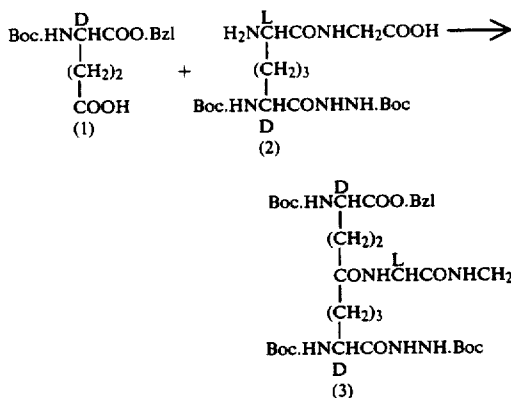
N.M.R. (D_2O), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.3 $\sim$ 2.6 (14H, m), 3.74 (1H, t, $J=6 \text{ Hz}$), 3.85 (2H, s), 3.99 $\sim$ 4.50 (3H, m).

65

155

EXAMPLE 57

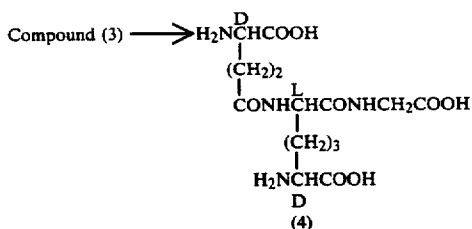
(1) Step 1



To a mixture of Compound (1) (674 mg.) and N-methylmorpholine (202 mg.) in dichloromethane (30 ml.), there was added isobutyl chloroformate (273 mg.) at -15° to -20° C. and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at the same temperature. The mixture was cooled to -40° C., and to this, there was added trimethyl silyl ester of Compound (2), which was prepared from Compound (2) (910 mg.) and bis(trimethylsilyl) acetamide (3 ml.) by stirring in a mixture of dichloromethane (20 ml.) and N,N-dimethylformamide (2 ml.). This mixture was stirred for 1 hour at -15° to 20° C., and after evaporation of the solvent, the residue was dissolved in ethylacetate (100 ml.), and then the solution was washed successively with 2% HCl and water, dried over MgSO_4 and evaporated. The residue was pulverized with isopropyl ether to give Compound (3) (1.25 g.).

N.M.R. (CDCl_3), δ (ppm): 1.43 (27H, s), 1.3~2.4 (10H, m), 3.8~4.5 (5H, m), 5.13 (2H, s), 7.33 (5H, s).

(2) Step 2



To a solution of Compound (3) (1.08 g.) in 50% aqueous methanol (10 ml.) was added 1 N-NaOH (3 ml.) and the mixture was stirred for 3 hours at ambient temperature. The reaction mixture was neutralized with 1 N hydrochloric acid (3 ml.) and evaporated. The residue was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (5 ml.) and stirred for 15 minutes at ambient temperature. After evaporation of trifluoroacetic acid, the residue was pulverized with diethyl ether. The powder thus obtained was dissolved in water (10 ml.), and 1 N hydrochloric acid (1.7 ml.) was added thereto. To this solution, was added a solution of NaIO_4 (354 mg.) in water (2 ml.) at 0° C., and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour at the same temperature. After excess of NaIO_4 was decomposed by adding sodium sulfite, the reaction mixture was adjusted to pH 4 with 1 N aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide and

156

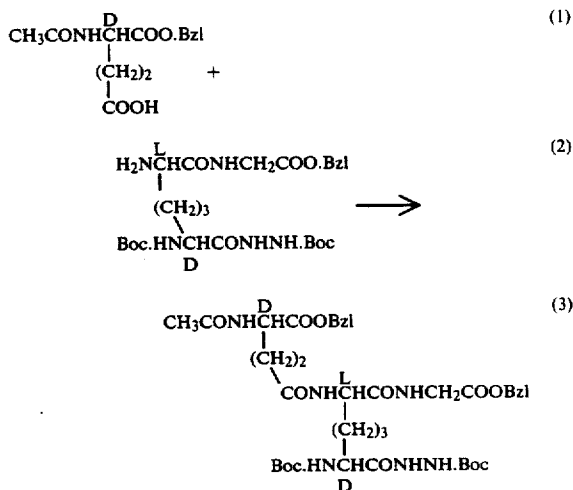
then concentrated to about 3 ml. The concentrate was subjected to column chromatography on non-ionic adsorption resin "Diaion HP-20"; (Trade Mark, manufactured by Mitsubishi Chemical Industries Ltd.) (60 ml.) and elution was carried out with water. The fractions containing the object compound was lyophilized to give compound (4) (140 mg.).

I.R. (KBr): 3500~2500, 1720, 1650.

N.M.R. (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.3~2.7 (10H, m), 3.90~4.50 (3H, m), 4.00 (2H, s).

EXAMPLE 58

(1) Step 1

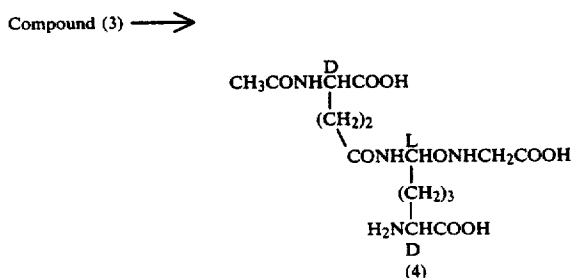


To a mixture of Compound (1) (560 mg.) and N-methylmorpholine (202 mg.) in dichloromethane (30 ml.), there was added isobutyl chloroformate (273 mg.) at -15° to 20° C. and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at the same temperature. The mixture was cooled to -40° C. and, to this, there was added trimethylsilyl ester of Compound (2), which was prepared from Compound (2) (910 mg.) and bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (3 ml.) by stirring in a mixture of dichloromethane (20 ml.) and N,N-dimethylformamide (2 ml.). The mixture was stirred for 1 hour at -15° to -20° C., and then treated in the same manner as the Step 1 of Example 59 to give Compound 3 (1.8 g.).

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1740, 1660.

N.M.R. (CD_3OD), δ (ppm): 1.58 (18H, s), 1.95 (3H, s), 1.50~2.50 (10H, m), 3.88 (2H, s), 3.8~4.5 (3H, m).

(2) Step 2



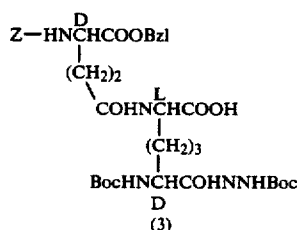
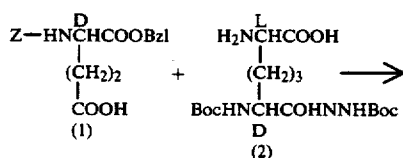
Compound (3) (0.95 mg.) was added to trifluoroacetic acid (5 ml.) and the solution was stirred for 15 min-

utes at ambient temperature. A evaporation of CF_3COOH , the residue was dissolved in water (10 ml.) and 1 N-HCl (1.7 ml) was added thereto. This solution was cooled to 0°C . and a solution of NaIO_4 (364 mg) in water (5 ml) was added thereto and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour at the same temperature. An excess of the reagent was decomposed, by adding Na_2SO_3 , and then the mixture was neutralized to pH 3 with 1 N-NaOH and submitted to column of HP-20 (20 ml.). The column, after washing with H_2O , was eluted with methanol:water (1:1). The fractions were concentrated, and the residue was dissolved in 50% aq. acetic acid (10 ml.) and hydrogenated over 10% palladium carbon (100 mg). After removal of the catalyst, the filtrate was concentrated. The residue was dissolved in H_2O and evaporated in order to remove a trace of acetic acid. This operation was repeated further two times. The residue was lyophilized to give Compound (4) (200 mg).

I.R. (Nujol): 3250, 1715, 1640.

N.M.R. (D_2O), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.5~2.1 (10H, m), 2.1 (3H, s), 3.8~4.5 (3H, m), 4.0 (2H, s).

EXAMPLE 59 (1) Step 1

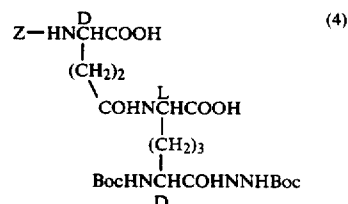
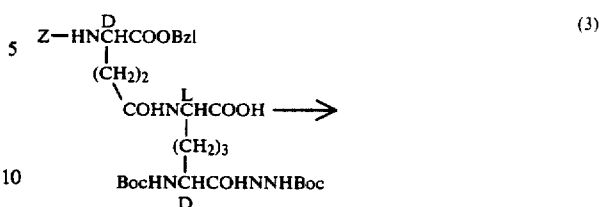


To a cooled mixture of Compound (1) (2.43 g.) and N-methylmorpholine (0.71 g.) in methylene chloride (40 ml.) was added dropwise isobutyl chloroformate (960 mg.) and the mixture was stirred for 20 minutes at 0°C . To this mixture was added a solution of Compound (2) (2.83 g.) in a mixture of methylene chloride (20 ml.) and dimethylformamide (10 ml.) containing bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (2 ml.). The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 hours and then concentrated to give an oily residue, which was dissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with water and dried over magnesium sulfate. Evaporation of the solvent gave a white foam, which was pulverized with isopropyl ether to give Compound (3) (4.20 g.) as white powder.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1740-1640 (broad) cm^{-1} .

N.M.R. ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.37 (18H, s), 1.17~2.40 (10H, m), 3.70~4.40 (3H, m), 5.03 (2H, s), 5.17 (2H, s), 7.37 (10H, s).

(2) Step 2

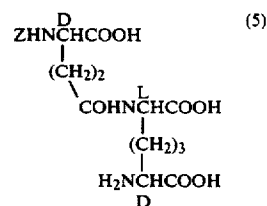
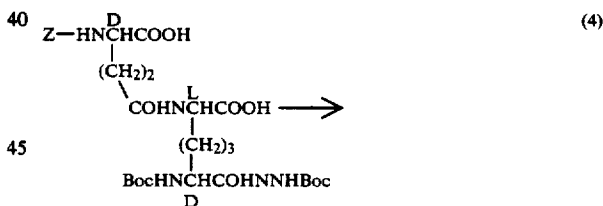


To a solution of Compound (3) (1.46 g.) in 50% aqueous methanol (10 ml.) was added 1 N sodium hydroxide (4.10 ml.) and the mixture was stirred for 2 hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the resulting aqueous solution was diluted with water. After washing with ether, the aqueous layer was acidified with 1 N hydrochloric acid to pH 2 and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate to give a white foam, which was pulverized with isopropyl ether to give Compound (4) (1.20 g.) as white powder.

I.R. (Nujol): 3400, 1740-1650 (broad) cm^{-1} .

N.M.R. ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.37 (18H, s), 1.17~2.40 (10H, m), 3.70~4.33 (3H, m), 5.03 (2H, s), 7.37 (5H, s).

(3) Step 3

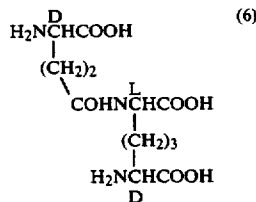
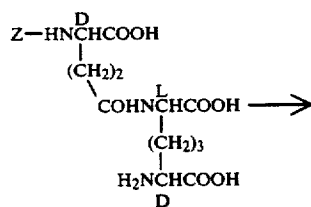


Compound (4) (1.05 g.) was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (5 ml.) and stirred for 15 minutes at room temperature. Evaporation of the solvent gave an oily residue, to which toluene was added and evaporated. The residue was dissolved in 0.1 N sulfuric acid (35 ml.) and cooled in an ice-bath. To this solution was added a solution of sodium periodate (640 mg.) in water (5 ml.) and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour at the same temperature. The reaction mixture was treated with aqueous sodium bisulfite solution until the dark brown color of the solution was disappeared. After adjusting the pH of the

solution to 4.0, the solution was concentrated to about 4 ml. and the pH was adjusted to 2.0. This solution was applied to a column of HP-20 (60 ml.) and eluted with water. Subsequent elution with 50% aqueous methanol gave fractions containing the object product, which were combined and evaporated to give a pasty residue. This residue was dissolved in water and lyophilized to give Compound (5) (0.453 g.) as white powder.

N.M.R. (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.7~2.70 (10H, m), 3.83 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 4.0~4.60 (2H, m), 5.13 (2H, s), 7.43 (5H, s).

(4) Step 4



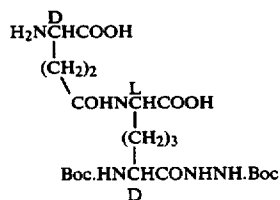
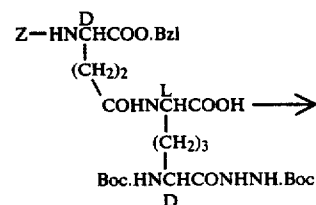
Compound (5) (0.40 g.) was dissolved in water (20 ml.) and hydrogenated over 10% palladium-charcoal (50 mg.). The catalyst was removed by filtration and the filtrate was applied to a column of HP-20 (50 ml.) and eluted with water. Evaporation of the fractions containing the object compound gave a pasty residue, which was dissolved in water and lyophilized to give Compound (6) (260 mg.) as white powder.

I.R. (Nujol): 3500~2500 (broad), 1710 (shoulder), 1620 cm^{-1} .

N.M.R. (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.20~2.60 (10H, m), 3.60~3.92 (2H, m), 4.0~4.20 (1H, m).

EXAMPLE 60

(1) Step 1



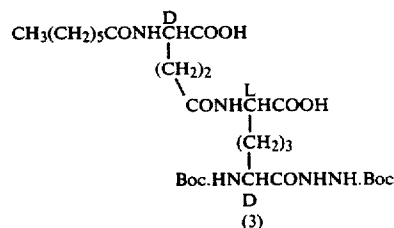
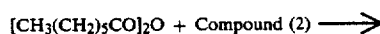
Compound (1) (2.30 g.) was dissolved in acetic acid (40 ml.) and hydrogenated over 10%-palladium-charcoal (300 mg.). The catalyst was removed by filtration and the filtrate was evaporated under reduced pressure

to give an oily paste, to which toluene was added. Evaporation of toluene afforded white powder residue, which was thoroughly washed with diisopropyl ether and collected by filtration to give Compound (2) (1.70 g.) as white powder.

I.R. (Nujol): 3500~2500 (broad), 1740~1650 (broad).

N.M.R. (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.50 (18H, s), 1.16~2.83 (10H, m), 3.83 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 4.0~4.50 (2H, m).

(2) Step 2

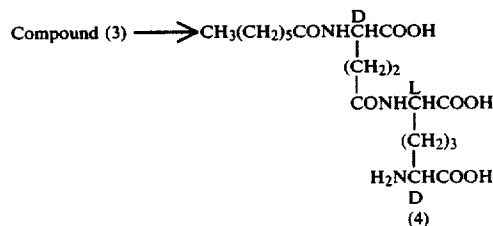


Compound (2) (800 mg.) was dissolved in methanol (10 ml.) and heptanoic anhydride (380 mg.) was added thereto. The reaction mixture was kept overnight at ambient temperature. Evaporation of the solvent gave an oily paste, which was triturated with diisopropyl ether to give Compound (3) (800 mg.) as white powder.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1740~1650 (broad).

N.M.R. (DMSO- d_6), δ (ppm): 0.83~2.40 (41H, m), 3.83~4.50 (3H, m).

(3) Step 3



Compound (3) (750 mg.) was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (4 ml.) and kept for 15 minutes at ambient temperature. Evaporation of trifluoroacetic acid gave an oily paste, which was suspended in toluene. Evaporation of toluene afforded white foamy residue, which was dissolved in 0.1 N- H_2SO_4 (30 ml.) and cooled in an ice bath. To this stirred solution, there was added aqueous NaIO_4 (350 mg. in 10 ml. H_2O) and stirring was continued for 1 hour. The resulting reaction mixture was treated with aqueous NaHSO_3 solution until the purple color of the solution disappeared. pH of the solution was made neutral by adding solid NaHCO_3 and the whole volume was concentrated to about 5 ml. pH of the solution was adjusted again to 2.0 and the whole solution was submitted to Column of HP-20 resin (100 ml.). The column was eluted with water and then Methanol-water (4:6). Evaporation of the latter fractions collected gave white foam, which was dissolved in water and lyophilized to give Compound (4) (180 mg.) as white powder.

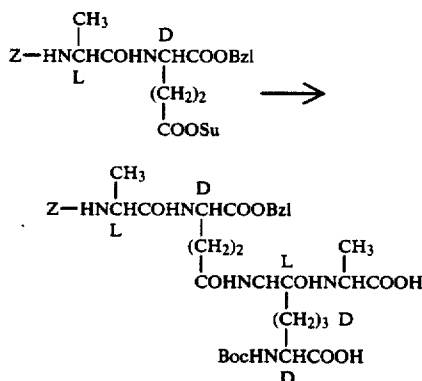
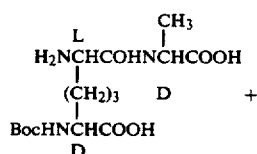
I.R. (Nujol): 3300~2400 (broad), 1720, 1630.

161

N.M.R. (D_2O), δ (ppm): 0.84 (3H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 1.0–2.60 (20H, m), 3.80 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 4.20–4.40 (2H, m).

EXAMPLE 61

(1) Step 1

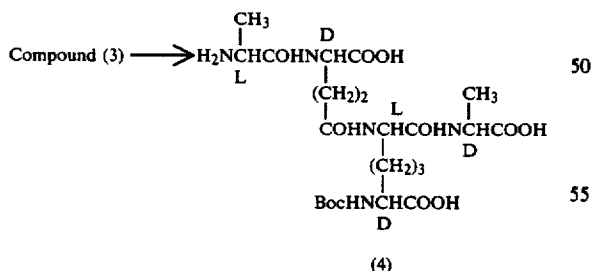


To a mixture of Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH(1) (3.40 g) and triethylamine (1.90 g) in 50% aqueous dioxane (80 ml) was added Z-L-Ala-D-Glu(γ -OSu)OBzl(2) (5.10 g) and the mixture was left overnight at room temperature. After evaporation of dioxane, the remaining aqueous solution was acidified with 1 N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated to give Z-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH(3) (7.30 g) as white foam.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 2600–2400, 1710, 1650 cm^{-1} .

N.M.R. ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$), δ : 1.0–2.50 (25H, m), 3.80–4.50 (5H, m), 5.05 (2H, S), 5.15 (2H, S), 7.40 (10H, S).

(2) Step 2



A solution of Z-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH(3) (7.0 g) in acetic acid (60 ml) was hydrogenated over 10% palladium-charcoal (0.50 g). The catalyst was removed by filtration and the filtrate was evaporated to give a white foam, which was dissolved in water (40 ml) and applied to a column of HP-20 (150 ml). The column was washed with water and eluted with methanol-water (3:7). The elute was concentrated and lyophilized to give L-Ala- γ -

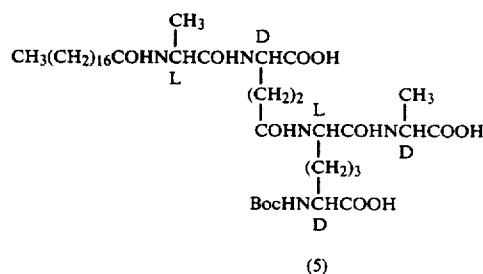
162

D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH(4) (4.30 g) as white powder.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 2600–2400, 1720 (shoulder), 1660 5 (broad) cm^{-1} .

N.M.R. (D_2O), δ : 1.20–2.50 (10H, m), 1.40 (9H, S), 1.36 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.54 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 3.90–4.50 (4H, m).

(3) Step 3

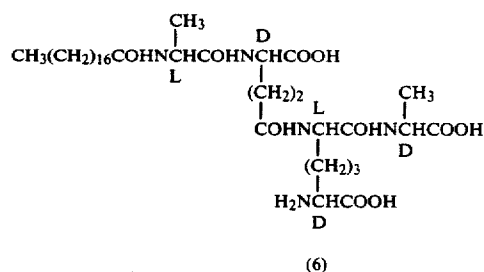
Compound (4) $\longrightarrow$ 

Stearoyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH(5) was prepared from L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH(4) and stearic anhydride in substantially the same manner as that of Step 1 of Example 1.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1710, 1635, 1520 cm^{-1} .

N.M.R. ($\text{CD}_3\text{OD}-\text{CDCl}_3$), δ : 0.90 (3H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 1.33 (30H, S), 1.43 (9H, S), 1.00–2.66 (18H, m), 3.60–4.60 (5H, m).

(4) Step 4

Compound (5) $\longrightarrow$ 

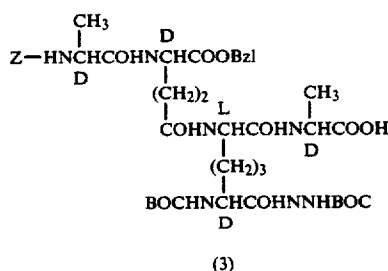
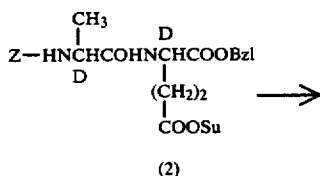
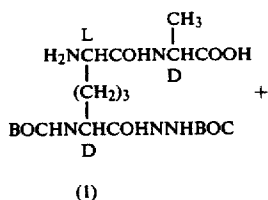
Stearoyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH(6) was prepared from Stearoyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH(5) in substantially the same manner as that of Step 2 of Example 1.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1730, 1650–1620, 1530 cm^{-1} .

N.M.R. ($D_2O + \text{NaOD}$), δ : 0.90 (3H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 1.00–2.66 (51H, m), 3.24 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 4.00–4.66 (4H, m).

EXAMPLE 62

(1) Step 1

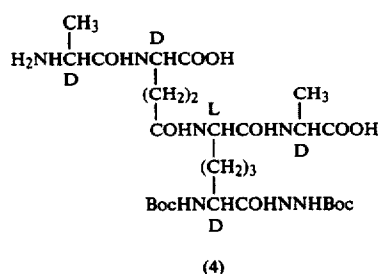


Z-D-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH(3) was prepared from Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH(1) and Z-D-Ala-D-Glu(γ-OSu)OBzl(2) in substantially the same manner as that of Step 1 of Example 1.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 2600 (shoulder), 1730, 1670, 1630 cm^{-1} .

N.M.R. (DMSO- d_6), δ : 1.00–2.60 (34H, m), 3.88–4.40 (5H, m).

(2) Step 2

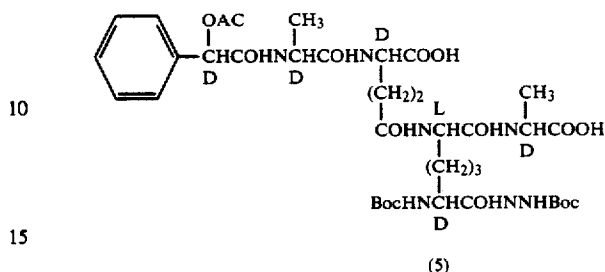
Compound (3) $\longrightarrow$ 

D-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH(4) was prepared from Z-D-Ala-γ-D-Glu(αOBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH(3) in substantially the same manner as that of Step 2 of Example 1.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 2600–2400 (shoulder), 1720 (shoulder), 1660 cm^{-1} .

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ : 1.00–2.60 (34H, m), 3.88–4.40 (5H, m).

(3) Step 3

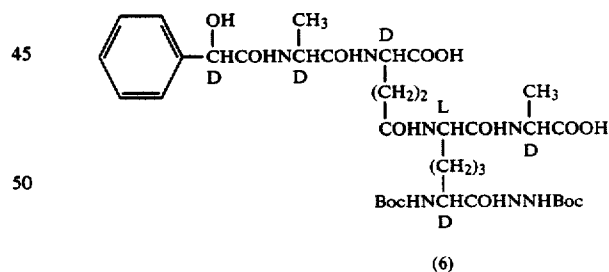
Compound (4) $\longrightarrow$ 

To a cooled solution of D-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH(4) (1.35g) in 50% aqueous acetone (10ml) was added IN sodium hydroxide. O-Acetyl-D-mandelyl chloride (0.61g) was added dropwise 0° C., during which time the pH was maintained at 8.0–9.0. After stirring for 1 hour at the same time, the reaction mixture was adjusted to pH 7.0 with IN hydrochloric acid and acetone was evaporated. The resulting aqueous solution was adjusted to pH 2.0 with IN hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated to give a residue, which was pulverized with ether to give O-acetyl-D-mandelyl-D-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH (5) (1.35g) as a solid.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1720, 1650, 1520 cm^{-1}

N.M.R. (CD₃OD), δ : 1.43 (18H, S), 1.00–2.66 (16H, m), 2.15 (3H, S), 4.00–5.00 (5H, m), 5.95 (1H, S), 7.35 (5H, S).

(4) Step 4

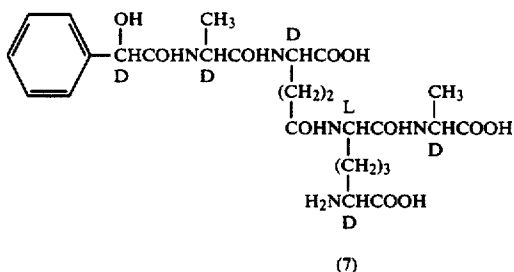
Compound (5) $\longrightarrow$ 

To a solution of O-acetyl-D-mandelyl-D-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH(6) (1.25g) in a mixture of methanol (20 ml) and water (10 ml) was added IN sodium hydroxide (4.5 ml). After stirring the mixture for 1 hour at room temperature, the pH of the mixture was adjusted to 6.0. After evaporation of methanol, the resulting aqueous solution was adjusted to pH 2.0 with IN hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated. The residue was washed with ether to give D-mandelyl-D-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH(6) (0.96 g) as a solid.

165

I.R. (Nujol): 3280, 1720-1650, 1520 cm^{-1} .
 N.M.R. (CD_3OD), δ : 1.43 (18H, S), 1.00-2.66 (16H, m), 3.83-4.66 (5H, m), 5.10 (1H, S), 7.17-7.66 (5H, m).

(5) Step 5

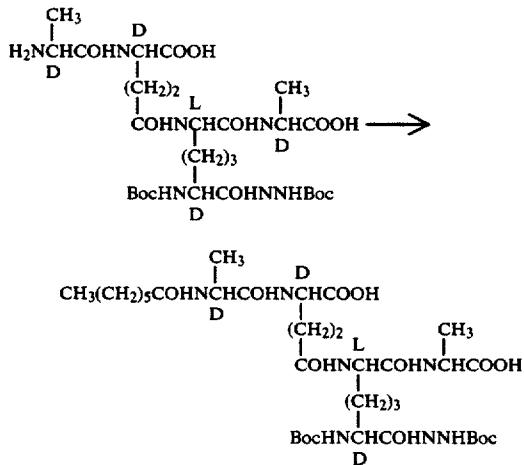
Compound (6) $\longrightarrow$ 

D-Mandelyl-D-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP(L)-D-AlaOH(7) was prepared from D-mandelyl-D-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH(6) in substantially the same manner as that of Step 2 of Example 1.

I.R. (Nujol): 3280, 1720, 1630-1610, 1520 cm^{-1} .
 N.M.R. (D_2O), δ : 1.32 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.40 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.20-2.40 (10H, m), 3.74 (1H, t, $J=6$ Hz), 4.00-4.50 (4H, m) 5.18 (1H, S), 7.42 (5H, S).

EXAMPLE 63

(1) Step 1



Heptanoyl-D-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH(2) was prepared from D-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-D-AlaOH(1) in substantially the same manner as that of Step 1 Example 1.

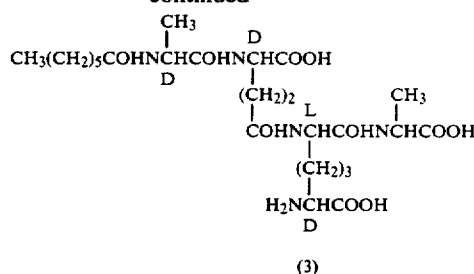
I.R. (Nujol): 3250, 1720, 1660-1640, 1530 cm^{-1} .
 N.M.R. (CD_3OD), δ : 0.90 (3H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 1.00-2.60 (44H, m), 3.90-4.60 (5H, m).

(2) Step 2

Compound (2) $\longrightarrow$

166

-continued



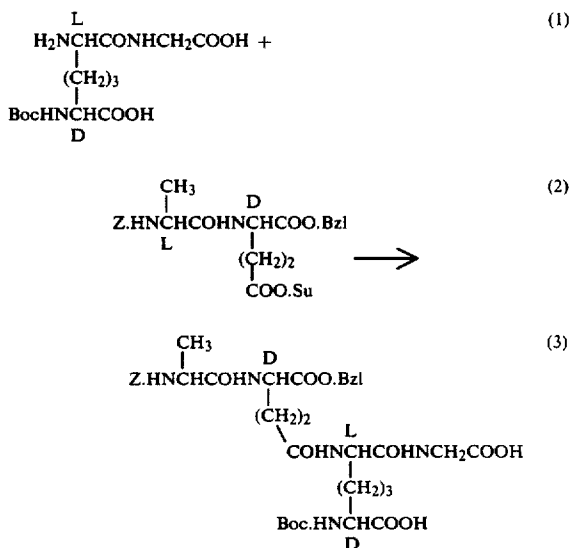
Heptanoyl-D-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP(L)-D-AlaOH(3) was prepared from heptanoyl-D-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-D-AlaOH(2) in substantially the same manner as that of Step 2 of Example 1.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1720, 1620, 1520 cm^{-1} .

N.M.R. (D_2O), δ : 0.80 (3H, t, $J=6$ Hz), 1.36 (6H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.00-2.60 (18H, m), 3.76 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 4.00-4.50 (4H, m).

EXAMPLE 64

(1) Step 1



Z-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OBzl)-(L)Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH (3) was prepared from Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH-(1) and Z-L-Ala-(D)Glu(α -Osu)OBzl (2) in substantially the same manner as that of Step 1 of Example 61.

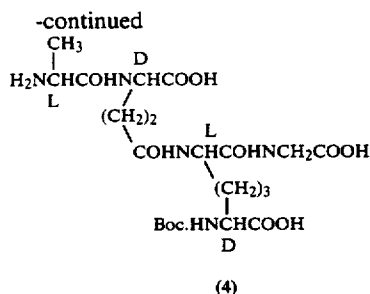
I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 2600-2400, 1720, 1690, 1650 cm^{-1} .

N.M.R. ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$), δ (ppm): 1.30 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.10-2.50 (19H, m), 3.80 (2H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 3.80-4.50 (4H, m), 5.05 (2H, s), 5.18 (2H, s), 7.40 (10H, s).

(2) Step 2

Compound (3) $\longrightarrow$

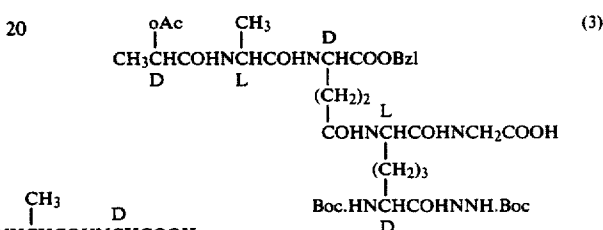
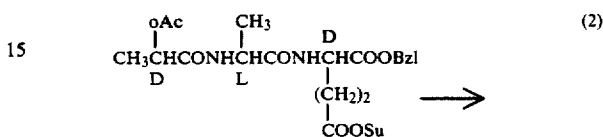
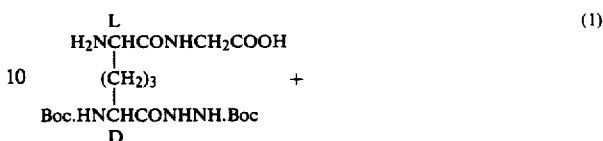
167



168

I.R. (Nujol): 3270, 1720, 1635, 1530 cm^{-1} .
 N.M.R. ($\text{D}_2\text{O}=\text{NaOD}$), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 0.85 (3H, m), 1.1–2.9 (33H, m), 3.23 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 3.76 (2H, s), 4.1–4.5 (3H, m), 5.32 (8H, m).

EXAMPLE 65

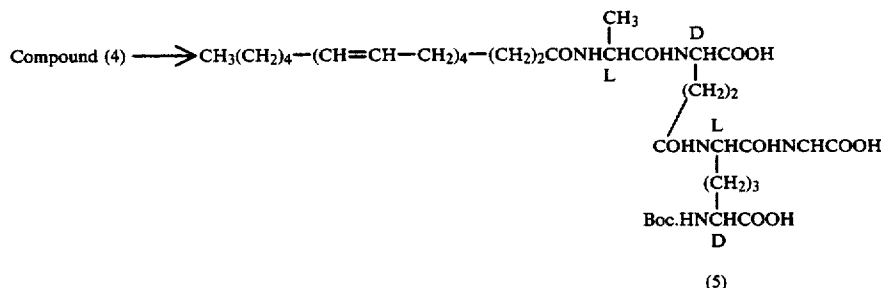


L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-GluOH (4) was prepared from Z-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP-(L)-GlyOH (3) in substantially the same manner as that of Step 2 of Example 61.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 2600–2400 (broad), 1720, 1650, (broad) cm^{-1} .

N.M.R. (D_2O), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.56 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.40 (9H, s), 1.20–2.50 (10H, m), 3.92 (2H, s), 4.0–4.40 (4H, m).

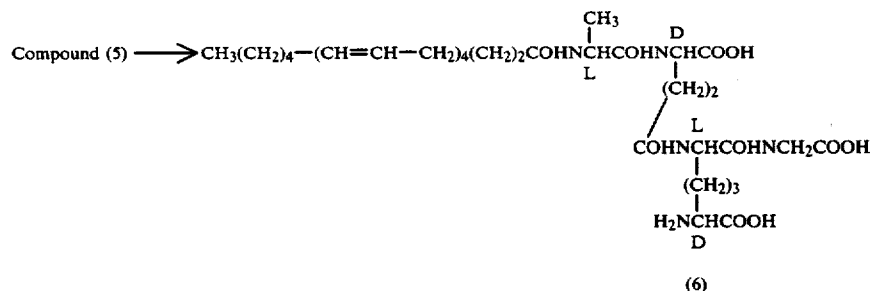
(31) Step 3



Arachidonyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP-(L)-GlyOH (5) was prepared from L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-GluOH (4) and N-hydroxyphthalimido ester of arachidonic acid in substantially the same manner as that of Step 3 of Example 61.

I.R. (Nujol): 3300, 1720, 1640, 1530 cm^{-1} .
 N.M.R. ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 0.83 (3H, m), 1.1–2.9 (42H, m), 3.82 (2H, s), 4.05–4.50 (4H, m), 5.20–5.50 (8H, m).

(4) Step 4



Arachidonyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP(L)-GlyOH (6) was prepared from arachidonyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH (5) in substantially the same manner as the Step 2 of Example 1.

(1) EXAMPLE 65-1
 Boc(D)-meso-DAP(L)GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (17.7 g) was dissolved in water (150 ml) and the solution was adjusted to pH 8 with N-methylmorpholine. To the solution was added a dioxane solution (180 ml) of D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -oBzl)(oSu) (2) (con-

taining 26.7 m mole of compound (2) as activated ester). The mixture was stirred for four hours at ambient temperature. Dioxane was distilled off under reduced pressure and the resulting mixture was washed with ether (100 ml) and adjusted to pH 3 with 5% aqueous hydro-

chloric acid. The solution was extracted with ethyl acetate (300 ml and 150 ml) and the extract was washed with water and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and then evaporated to dryness. The residue was crystallized from a mixture of chloroform and ether (1:3) to give D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP(L)GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (3) (10.8 g). mp 105°–113° I C. (dec.).

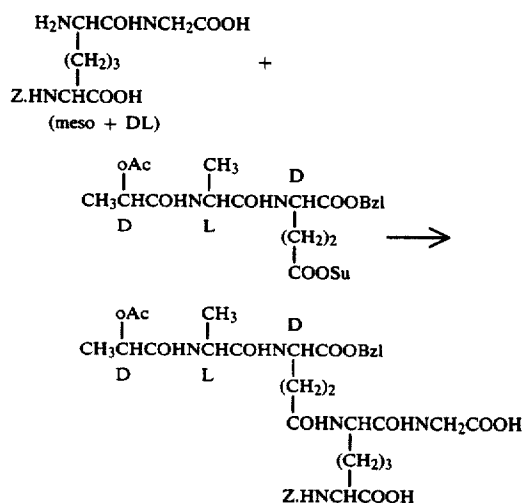
N.M.R. (CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 1.3–1.8 (30H, m), 2.08 (3H, s), 2.1–2.4 (4H, m), 3.92 (2H, s), 4.2–4.6 (4H, m), 10 4.8–5.1 (1H, m), 5.17 (2H, s), 7.33 (5H, s).

(2) EXAMPLE 65-2

D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(OH)oBzl (5.2 g) was dissolved in methylene chloride (60 ml) and N-methylmorpholine (1.10 g) was added thereto. To the mixture was added dropwise isobutyl chloroformate (1.50 g) at –10°–15° C. and the mixture was stirred at –10°–15° C. for thirty minutes. To the mixture was added a solution prepared by dissolving bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (9 ml) and Boc(D)meso-DAP(L)-GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (1) (4.60 g) in a mixture of methylene chloride (50 ml) and dimethylformamide (10 ml).

The resulting solution was stirred at –10°–15° C. for two hours and at 0° C. for an hour and then concentrated to about 30 ml. To the concentrate were added ethyl acetate (200 ml) and 2% aqueous hydrochloric acid (100 ml). The ethyl acetate layer was separated and washed with water and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. Ethyl acetate was evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure and the residue thus obtained was washed with ether to give D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP(L)GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (3) (8.2 g) of which N.M.R. spectrum was identical with that of the product prepared in Example 65-1.

EXAMPLE 66

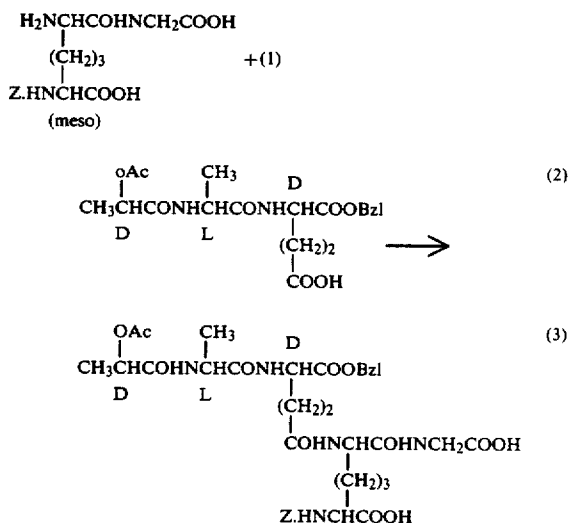


ZDAP(OH)GlyOH (1) (80 mg) was added to a solution of D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(oSu)oBzl (2) (59 mg) in dimethylformamide (4 ml) containing triethylamine (0.03 ml) at 0° C. The mixture was stirred overnight at ambient temperature and then evaporated to dryness. To the residue thus obtained was added dil. 65 hydrochloric acid and then extraction was carried out with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water and evaporated to dryness. The residue was recrystallized from a mixture of hexane and chloroform to give D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-Z-DAP(OH)-GlyOH (3) (86 mg).

lized from a mixture of hexane and chloroform to give D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-Z-DAP(OH)-GlyOH (3) (86 mg).

N.M.R. (CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 1.35 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.43 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.3–2.2 (8H, m), 1.12 (3H, s), 2.30 (2H, m), 3.95 (2H, s), 4.0–4.6 (4H, m), 5.12 (2H, s), 5.18 (2H, s), 7.36 (10H, s).

EXAMPLE 67

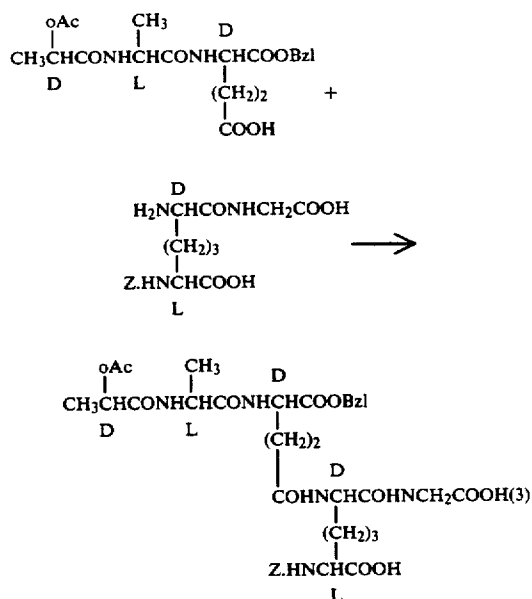


Z-meso-DAPGlyOH(1) (1.23 g) and bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (4.00 g) were suspended in methylene chloride (50 ml) and the suspension was stirred at ambient temperature for four hours.

On the other hand, D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(OH)oBzl (2) dicyclohexylamine salt (2.34 g) was dissolved in methylene chloride (30 ml), and triethylamine hydrochloric acid salt (0.54 g) was added at ambient temperature to the solution while stirring. The stirring was continued for two hours and the reaction mixture was cooled to –30° C. and a solution of isobutyl chloroformate (0.53 g) in methylene chloride (50 ml) was added dropwise thereto. The resulting mixture was reacted for twenty minutes at the same temperature. To the reaction mixture was added dropwise a methylene chloride solution of Z-meso-DAPGlyOH prepared above and the resulting mixture was stirred at –30° C. for an hour. The reaction mixture was reacted at ambient temperature for four hours and filtered. The filtrate was washed with 10% aqueous hydrochloric acid and concentrated under reduced pressure and the residue thus obtained was extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate layer was washed with water and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and concentrated under reduced pressure to give an oily D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-Z-meso-DAPGLyOH (3 g).

N.M.R. (CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 1.35(3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.43 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.3–2.2 (8H, m), 2.112(3H, s), 2.30 (2H m), 3.95(2H, s), 4.0–4.6(4H, m), 5.12(2H, s), 5.18(2H, s), 7.36(10H, s).

EXAMPLE 68

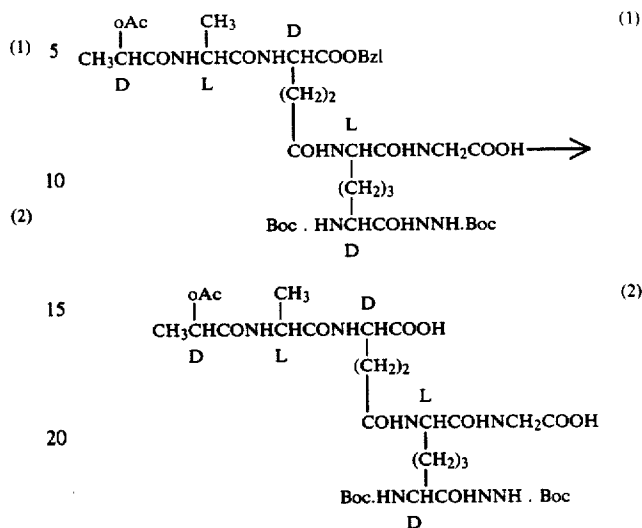


To a mixture of D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(OH)-α-OBzl (1) (653 mg) and N-hydroxysuccinimide (178 mg) in dioxane (7 ml) was added N,N'-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (320 mg).

The mixture was stirred at 10° C. for ten minutes and further stirred at ambient temperature for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was evaporated to dryness and the residue was dissolved in dioxane (4.5 ml). A 3 ml portion of this solution was added to a mixture of Z-(L)-mesoDAP-(D)GlyOH(270 mg) and N-methylmorpholine (156 μl) in dioxane (4 ml) and the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature. After 4.5 hours, a 0.9 ml portion of the above dioxane solution and N-methylmorpholine (100 μl) was added and the mixture was stirred at the same temperature. After 4.5 hours an additional 0.6 ml of the above dioxane solution was added and the mixture was stirred for 1.25 hours. The reaction mixture was washed with ether, acidified to pH 2 with a diluted aqueous hydrochloric acid and extracted with a mixture of ethyl acetate and methylene chloride, containing 1 N hydrochloric acid, water and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated to give an amorphous solid (660 mg) which was dissolved in chloroform and triturated with ether to give D-Lac-(oAc)-L-Ala-α-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-(D)-Z-(L)-mesoDAP-(D)-GlyOH (3) (450 mg).

N.M.R. (CDCl₃-CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 1.37 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.45 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.2-1.9 (6H, m), 2.0-2.5 (4H, m), 3.93 (2H, broad s), 4.1-4.7 (3H, m), 5.10 (2H, s), 5.17 (2H, s).

EXAMPLE 69

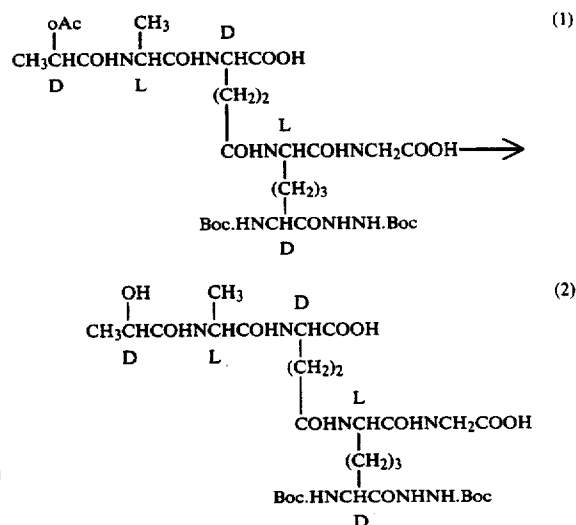


D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP(L)GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (1) (9.4 g) was hydrogenated in acetic acid (100 ml) over 10% palladium black (2.0 g) for 2 hours under 1.5 hydrogen atmospheric pressure at ambient temperature.

After completion of the reaction, the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure. The residue was triturated with ether to give D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP-(L)GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (2) (7.50 g).

N.M.R. (CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 1.3-1.9 (m), 2.10 (3H, s), 2.1-2.4 (4H, m), 3.90 (2H, s), 4.2-4.6 (4H, m), 4.8-5.1 (1H, m).

EXAMPLE 70



D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP(L)-Gly(OH)-(D)-NHNHBoc (1) (1.65 g) was dissolved in 50% aqueous methanol (32 ml) and the solution was stirred for 2.5 hours at ambient temperature, maintaining the pH at 9.0 with 5% aqueous solu-

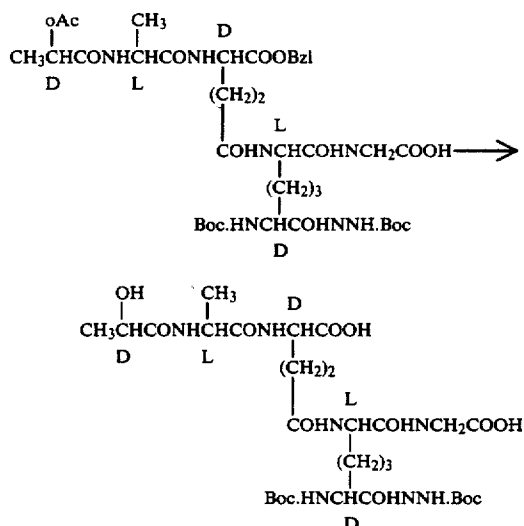
173

tion of potassium carbonate. The solution was evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure. The residue was adjusted to pH 3 with 5% aqueous hydrochloric acid and then passed through a column packed with a macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP20 (500 ml). The resin was washed with water (200 ml) and eluted with a mixture of methanol and water (1:1 volume). The eluate was evaporated to dryness and the residue was washed with ether to give D-Lac-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP(L)GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (2) (1.24 g).

I.R. (Nujol): 3270–2600, 1720, 1640 cm^{-1} .

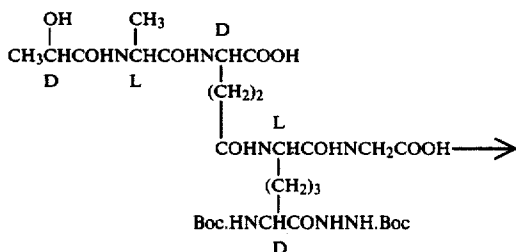
N.M.R. (CD_3OH), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.47 (18H, s), 3.93 (2H, s).

EXAMPLE 71

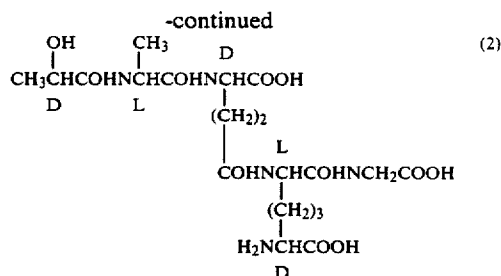


D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP(L)GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (1) (1.0 g) was dissolved in 50% aqueous methanol (20 ml), and 1 N aqueous sodium hydroxide (3.7 ml) was added thereto. The resulting solution was stirred for two hours at ambient temperature and concentrated to about 5 ml. The concentrate was adjusted to pH 3 and passed through a column packed with a macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP20 (24 ml). The column was washed with water (100 ml) and eluted with a mixture of methanol and water (1:1) and the eluate was evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure. The residue thus obtained was washed with ether to give D-Lac-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP(L)GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc. (2) (660 mg) which was identified with the product prepared in Example 70.

EXAMPLE 72



174



(1) EXAMPLE 72-1

D-Lac-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP(L)-GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (1) (200 mg) was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (1 ml) and the solution was stirred for fifteen minutes at ambient temperature. The solution was evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure. The residue was titrated with ether. The powder thus obtained was dissolved in water (5 ml) and 0.1 N aqueous sulfuric acid (6.8 ml) was added. To the mixture was added dropwise a solution of sodium periodate (146 mg) in water (2 ml). The mixture was stirred for an hour under ice-cooling and then the excess reagent was decomposed with sodium bisulfite. The resulting solution was adjusted to pH 3 with an aqueous saturated sodium bicarbonate and concentrated to 1 ml under reduced pressure. The concentrate was passed through a column packed with a macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP20 and eluted with water. The eluate was lyophilized to give D-Lac-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-meso-DAP(L)GlyOH (2) (86 mg) as a solid.

N.M.R. (D_2O), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.40 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.46 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 3.88 (1H, t, $J=5$ Hz), 4.02 (2H, s). $[\alpha]_D = -30.0$ ($c=0.4$, water).

(2) EXAMPLE 72-2

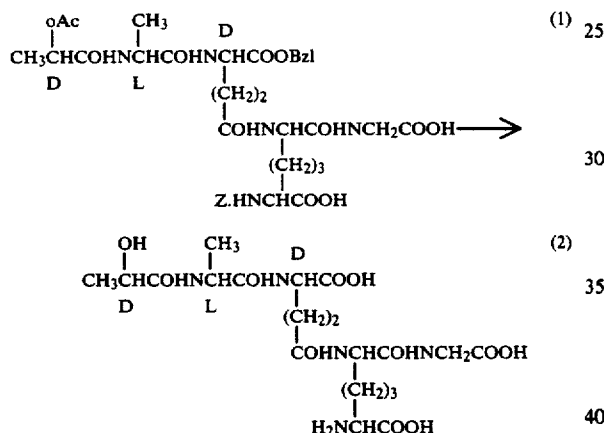
D-Lac-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP(L)-GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (1) (220 mg) was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (1.5 ml) and the solution was stirred for fifteen minutes at ambient temperature. The trifluoroacetic acid was evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure and the residue thus obtained was triturated with ether. The powder was dissolved in a mixture of water (5 ml) and dioxane (7 ml), and N-bromosuccinimide (110 mg) was added under ice-cooling thereto and the solution was stirred for an hour. The reaction mixture was concentrated to about 1 ml and the concentrate was adjusted to pH 2.5 with 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The solution was passed through a column packed with a macroporous nonionic adsorption resin, HP20 (16 ml) and elution was carried out with water and the eluate was lyophilized to give D-Lac-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-meso-DAP(L)-GlyOH (2) (150 mg), which was identified with the product prepared in Example 72-1.

(3) EXAMPLE 72-3

D-Lac-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP(L)-GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (1) (200 mg) was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (1 ml) and the solution was stirred at ambient temperature for fifteen minutes. Trifluoroacetic acid was evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure. The residue thus obtained was triturated and the powder was dissolved in 60% aqueous acetic acid (15 ml). To the solution was added manga-

nese dioxide (65 mg) while stirring at ambient temperature and the mixture was stirred at the same temperature for 1.5 hours. Insoluble materials were filtered off and then the filtrate was evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure. The residue thus obtained was dissolved in 50% aqueous ethanol and cooled to -10° – -20° C. and then adjusted to pH 9 with aqueous ammonium. The solution was allowed to stand at the same temperature for two hours. Insoluble materials were filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure. The residue was passed through a column packed with activated carbon (19 ml). The column was washed with water (30 ml) and eluted with 70% aqueous acetone. The fraction containing the object compound was collected and evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure. The residue was pulverized with a mixture of methanol and ether to give D-Lac-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-meso-DAP(L)GlyOH (2) (84 mg), whose structure was confirmed in comparison of data of the products prepared in Example 72-1.

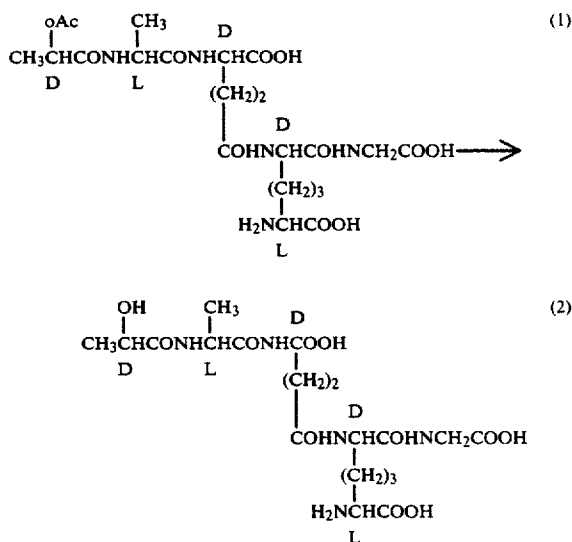
EXAMPLE 73



D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OBzl)-ZDAP(OH)-GlyOH (1) (2.80 g) was dehydrogenated in acetic acid (15 ml) over 10% palladium black (0.50 g) under two atmospheric pressure of hydrogen for six hours. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated to give an oil. The oil was dissolved in water and the solution was adjusted to pH 9.0–9.5 with diluted aqueous solution of potassium carbonate, and then stirred under ice-cooling for four hours. The reaction mixture was adjusted to pH 7 with dil. hydrochloric acid and concentrated. The concentrate was dissolved in methanol and insoluble materials were filtered off. The methanolic filtrate was evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure, and the residue was dissolved in water (3 ml) adjusted to pH 3–3.2, passed through a column packed with a macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP20 (200 ml) and then eluted with water. The fractions containing the object compound were collected and concentrated to give a powder (400 mg). The powder was dissolved in water and the solution was again passed through a column packed with a macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP20 (100 ml). Elution was carried out with water and the fraction containing the object compound was collected and concentrated to give D-Lac-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-DAP(OH)GlyOH (2) (100 mg), whose structure was

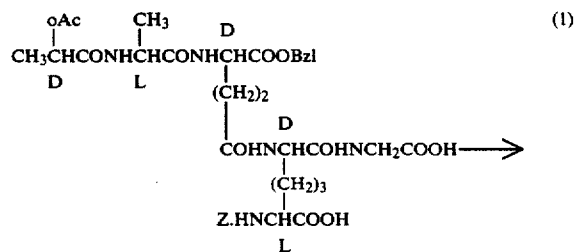
confirmed in comparison of data of the products prepared in Example 72-1.

EXAMPLE 74

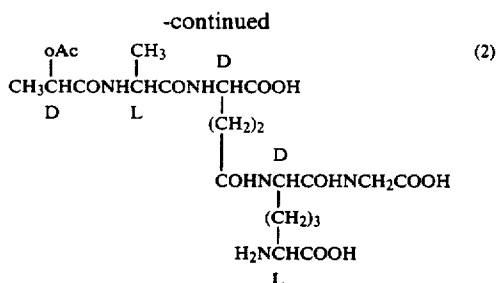


5% Aqueous potassium bicarbonate (3.25 ml) was added to a solution of D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(D)-mesoDAP(D)GlyOH (1) (278 mg) in 5% aqueous methanol (6 ml) at ambient temperature. The mixture was stirred at ambient temperature with occasional addition of 5% aqueous potassium bicarbonate in order to maintain pH 9. The reaction mixture was acidified to pH 3.5 with 1 N aqueous hydrochloric acid and evaporated to dryness. The residue was dissolved in water and the solution was concentrated to about 2 ml. The concentrate was chromatographed on macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP20 (15 ml) and elution was carried out with water. The fraction containing the object compound was evaporated, and the residue was dissolved in a small amount of water and lyophilized to give D-Lac-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-GlyOH (135 mg), whose structure was confirmed in comparison of data of the products prepared in Example 72-1.

EXAMPLE 75



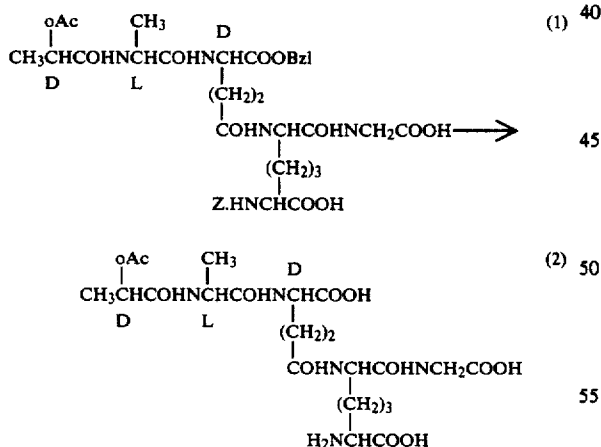
177



A mixture of D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-(D)-Z-(L)-mesoDAP-(D)-GlyOH (1) (440 mg) and 10% palladium black (90 mg) in acetic acid (5 ml) was stirred under hydrogen atmosphere for four hours. Additional 10% palladium black (60 mg) and acetic acid (3 ml) were added to the reaction mixture and the stirring was continued under hydrogen atmosphere for four hours. The reaction mixture was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure and the residue was dissolved in water. The aqueous solution was evaporated to dryness. The residue was again dissolved in water and concentrated. The concentrate was lyophilized to give D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(D)-meso-DAP(D)GlyOH (2) (301 mg).

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.42 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.47 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 2.14 (3H, s), 1.0-2.8 (10H, m), 3.80 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 3.94 (2H, s), 4.1-4.6 (3H, m) 5.02 (1H, q, J=7 Hz).

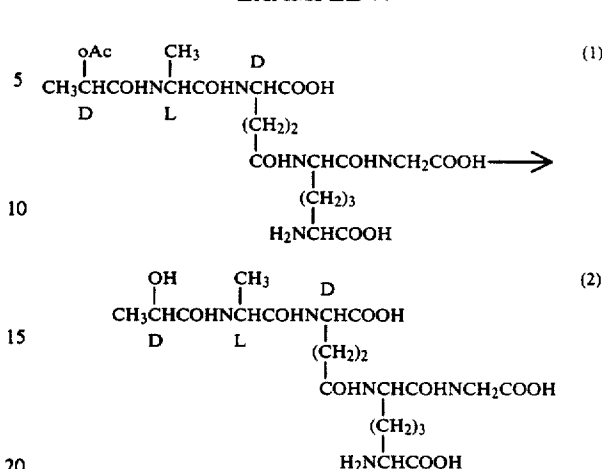
EXAMPLE 76



A solution of D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-oBzl)-Z-DAP(OH)GlyOH in methanol (1) (20 mg) was dehydrogenated over 10% palladium black (50 mg). The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was evaporated to dryness to give D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-DAP(OH)GlyOH (2) (10 mg), whose structure was confirmed in comparison of data of the products prepared in Example 75.

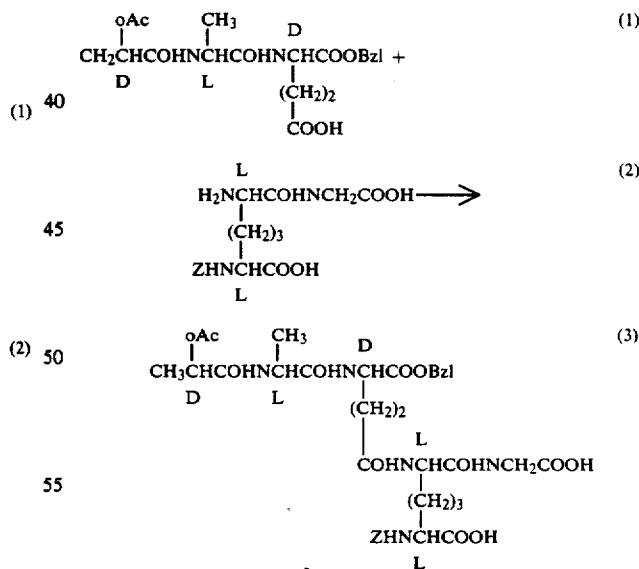
178

EXAMPLE 77



D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-DAP(OH)-GlyOH (1) (10 mg) was added to 0.05 M solution of potassium carbonate in 70% methanol (0.6 ml) at 0° C. and the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for an hour. The reaction mixture was neutralized with acetic acid and then evaporated to give a residue. The residue was purified by using carbon column chromatography. Elution was carried out with 50% aqueous acetone to give D-Lac-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-DAP(OH)GlyOH (2) (7 mg), whose structure was confirmed in comparison of data of the products prepared in Example 72-1.

EXAMPLE 78



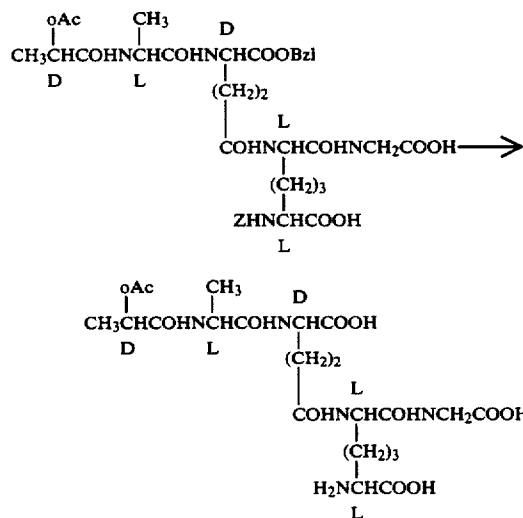
To a mixture of D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala-D-Glu(OH)oBzl (1) (2.45 g) and succinic acid (740 mg) in dioxane (20 ml) was added N,N'-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (1.25 g) at 12° C. and the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 16 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered and N,N'-dicyclohexylurea was washed with dioxane.

The filtrate and the washings were combined and concentrated. The concentrate was dissolved in dioxane (18 ml). This solution was used for the next reaction. To

a mixture of Z-(α)-L-DAP-(ϵ)-GlyOH (2) (1.21 g) and N-methylmorpholine (1.02 ml) in water (20 ml) was added the above solution at 5° C. and the mixture was stirred at 5° C. for 40 minutes and at ambient temperature for 4 hours. An additional N-methylmorpholine (0.2 ml) was added to the reaction mixture and the resulting mixture was stirred at the same temperature for two hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the concentrate was diluted with water. The solution was washed with ether and acidified with dil. hydrochloric acid to pH 2. To the solution was added a mixture of methylene chloride and ethyl acetate and the mixture was shaken and then filtered to give insoluble materials and the organic layer. The organic layer was washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated. The residue was combined with the insoluble materials described above and dissolved in a mixture of chloroform and methanol (1:1). The solution was concentrated and the concentrate was triturated with a mixture of ethyl acetate and ether (1:2) to give a powder (1.8 g), which was dissolved in a mixture of chloroform and methanol and ethyl acetate (1:1:1) and concentrated. The concentrate was triturated with a mixture of ethyl acetate and ether (5:1) to give D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -oBzl)-(α)-Z-(ϵ)-L-DAP-(α)-GlyOH (3) (1.654 g).

N.M.R. (CDCl₃-CD₃OD), δ (ppm): 1.37 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.46 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 2.11 (3H, s), 1.2-2.6 (10H, m), 3.95 (2H, s), 4.0-4.6 (4H, m), 4.96 (1H, q, J=7 Hz), 5.08 (2H, s), 5.15 (2H, s), 7.33 (10H, s).

EXAMPLE 79

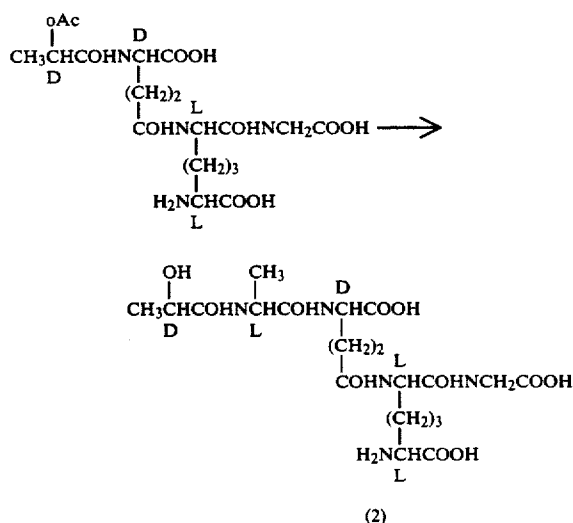


A solution of D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -oBzl)-(α)-Z-(ϵ)-L-DAP-(α)-GlyOH (1) (1.59 g) in acetic acid (40 ml) was hydrogenated over 10% palladium black (500 mg) for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filter cake was washed with 50% aqueous methanol. The filtrate and the washings were combined and evaporated and pumped to give a residue (1.5 g). Contaminated acetic acid was removed by co-evaporation with water and this operation was repeated once more. The residue was dissolved in water and lyophilized to give D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(α)-L-DAP-(α)-GlyOH (2) (1.10 g).

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ (ppm): 1.43 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.48 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.3-2.7 (10H, m), 2.15 (3H, s), 3.80

(1H, broad t, J=6 Hz), 3.95 (2H, s), 4.0-4.6 (3H, m), 5.05 (1H, q, J=7 Hz).

EXAMPLE 80



To a solution of D-Lac(oAc)-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(α)-L-DAP-(α)-GlyOH (1) in a mixture of methanol (15 ml) and water (5 ml) was added 1 N sodium hydroxide (7.5 ml) at 5° C. The solution was stirred at the same temperature for 30 minutes and at ambient temperature for 2.25 hours.

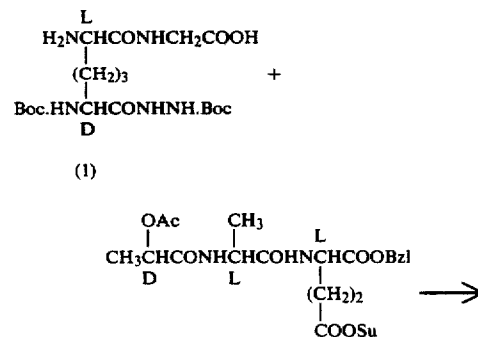
The resulting solution was acidified to pH 4 with 3 N hydrochloric acid and concentrated. The concentrate was diluted with water to 10 ml, acidified to pH 2.2 with 3 N hydrochloric acid and chromatographed on a column of a macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP 20 (135 ml). Elution was carried out with water and the eluate was concentrated and lyophilized to give D-Lac-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(α)-L-DAP-(α)-GlyOH (2) (681 mg). mp. 130° C. (dec.).

N.M.R. (D₂O), δ (ppm): 1.39 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.45 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.1-2.6 (10H, m), 3.86 (1H, t, J=6 Hz), 4.00 (2H, s), 4.1-4.6 (4H, m).

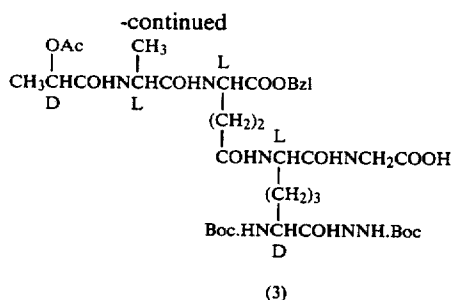
$[\alpha]_D^{15} = -23.3^\circ$ (C=0.322, water).

EXAMPLE 81

(1) Step 1



181



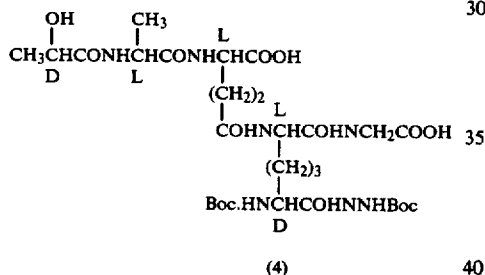
D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-L-Glu(α-OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP(L)-GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (3) was prepared from Boc(D)-meso-DAP(L)-GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (1) and D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-L-Glu(α-OBzl) (2) in substantially the same manner as that of Example 65-1.

IR(Nujol): 3300, 1735, 1695 1645 cm^{-1} .

NMR (CD_3OD): 1.40(9H, S), 1.42(9H, S), 2.08(3H, S), 3.90(2H, broad S), 4.00~5.00(5H, m), 5.10(2H, S), 7.30(5H, S).

(2) Step 2

Compound (3) $\longrightarrow$

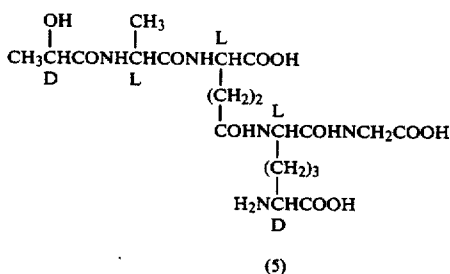


D-Lac(OH)-L-Ala-γ-L-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP(L)-GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (4) was prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Example 71.

NMR (CD_3OD): δ (ppm): 1.44(9H, S), 1.46(9H, S), 3.90(2H, broad S), 4.00~4.60(5H, m).

(3) Step 3

Compound (4) $\longrightarrow$



D-Lac(OH)-L-Ala-γ-L-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-meso-DAP(L)-GlyOH (5) was prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Example 72-1.

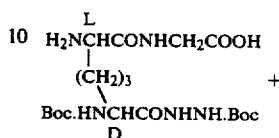
182

NMR (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.38(3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.00~2.60(10H, m), 3.98(2H, S), 3.84(1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 4.1~4.5(4H, m).

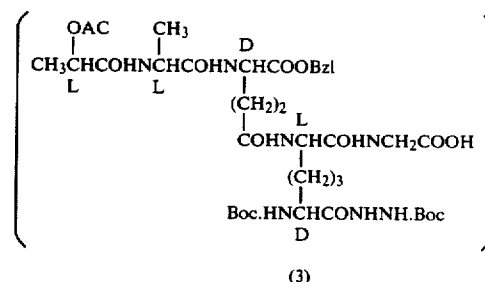
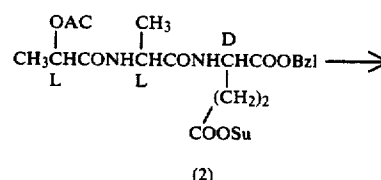
$[\alpha]_D = -34.7$ ($c=0.15$ water).

EXAMPLE 82

(1) Step 1



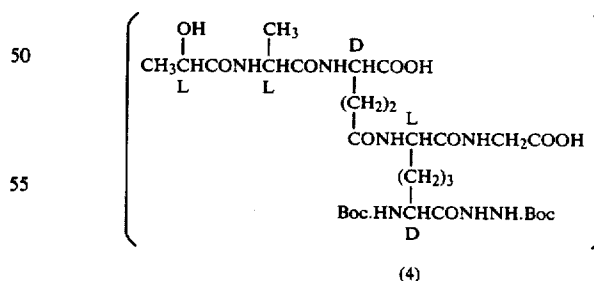
(1)



L-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP(L)-GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (3) was prepared from Boc (D)-mesoDAP(L)-GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (1) and L-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OBzl) (2) in substantially the same manner as that of Example 65-1.

(2) Step 2

Compound (3) $\longrightarrow$



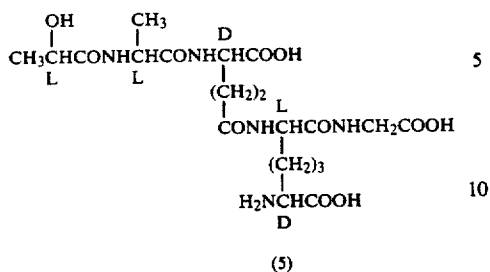
L-Lac(OH)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP(L)-GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (4) was prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Example 71.

Step (3)

Compound (4) $\longrightarrow$

183

-continued



L-Lac(OH)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-meso-DAP(L)GlyOH (5) was prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Example 72-1.

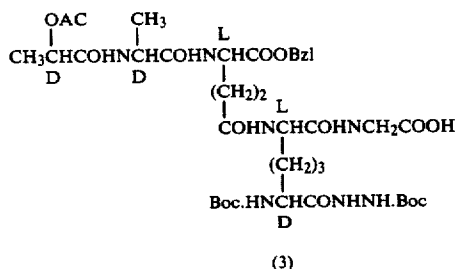
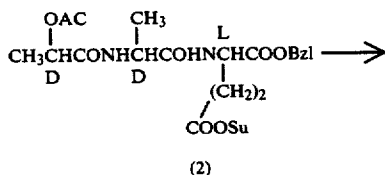
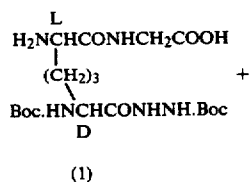
mp 170° ~ 174° C. (dec).

[α]_D = -33.2° (C=0.25, water).

NMR(D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.38(3H, t, J=7 Hz), 1.45(3H, t, J=7 Hz), 3.89(1H, t, J=7 Hz), 4.01(2H, s), 4.20 4.55(m).

EXAMPLE 83

(1) Step 1



D-Lac(OAC)-D-Ala-γ-L-Glu(α-OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP(L)-GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (3) was prepared from Boc(D)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (1) and D-Lac(OAC)-D-Ala-γ-L-Glu(α-OBzl) (2) in substantially the same manner as that of Example 65-1.

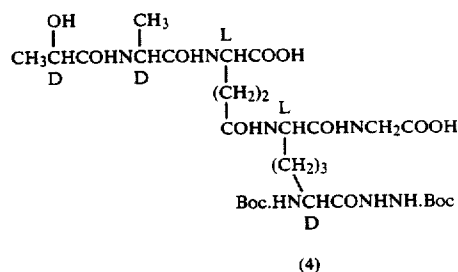
NMR (CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 1.40(9H, s), 1.42(9H, s), 2.06(3H, s), 3.90(2H, broad s), 3.90~5.00(5H, m), 5.15(2H, s), 7.35(5H, s).

(2) Step 2

Compound (3) →

184

-continued



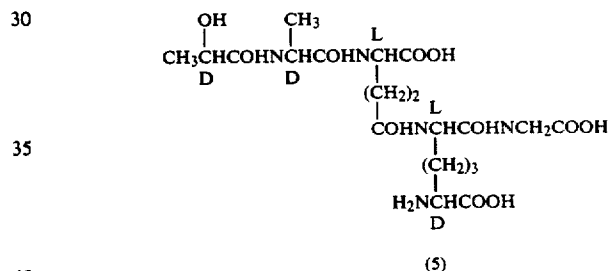
D-Lac(OH)-D-Ala-γ-L-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-meso-DAP(L)-GlyOH-(D)-NHNHBoc (4) was prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Example 71.

IR(Nujol): 3300, 1740, 1690 1740 (Broad) cm⁻¹.

NMR (CD₃OD), δ(ppm): 3.90(2H, broad s), 4.00~4.60(5H, m).

(3) Step 3

Compound (4) →



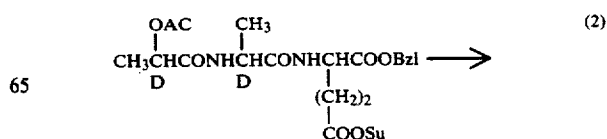
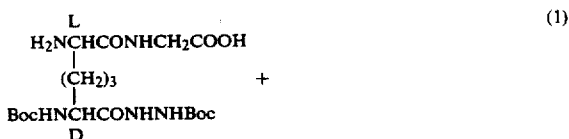
D-Lac(OH)-D-Ala-γ-L-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP(L)GlyOH (5) was prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Example 72-1.

NMR (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.35(3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.40(3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.00~2.60(10H, m), 3.80(1H, t, J=7 Hz), 3.90(2H, s), 4.10~4.5(4H, m).

[α]_D = +0.76 (c=0.35, water).

EXAMPLE 84

(1) Step 1



Benzenesulfonyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH.

mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH.

Cinnamoyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)mesoDAP-(D)-NHNBoc-(L)-GlyOH was prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Step 1 of Example 1.

Cinnamoyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNH₂-(L)-GlyOH was prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Step 3 of Example 11.

NMR (D₂O), δ (ppm): 1.47 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.34–2.42 (10H, m), 3.95 (2H, s), 3.78–4.58 (4H, m), 6.64 (1H, d, $J=16$ Hz), 7.37–7.70 (6H, m).

Cinnamoyl-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH was prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Step 4 of Example 11.

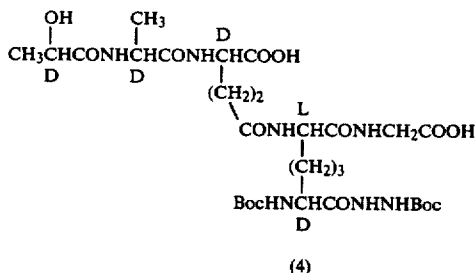
NMR (D₂O), δ (ppm): 1.46 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.28-2.44 (10H, m), 3.72 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 3.88 (2H, s), 4.20-4.46 (4H, m), 6.67 (1H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 7.38-7.46 (6H, m).

(1) Step 1

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{H}_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_4 \\ | \\ \text{ZHNCHCOOH} \\ | \\ \text{D} \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \text{OAc} \quad \text{CH}_3 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CH}_3\text{CHCONHCHCONHCHCOOBzl} \\ | \quad | \quad | \\ \text{D} \quad \text{L} \quad \text{D} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{D} \\ | \\ (\text{CH}_2)_2 \\ | \\ \text{COOH} \end{array} \longrightarrow$$

N.M.R. (CD₃OD), δ (ppm): 1.41 (18H, s), 2.12 (3H, s), 3.92 (2H, broad s), 4.00–5.10 (5H, m), 5.16 (2H, s), 7.36 (5H, s).

Compound (3) $\longrightarrow$

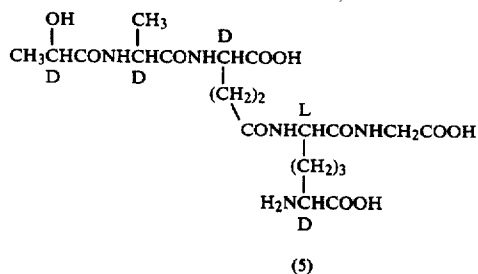


D-Lac(OH)-D-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNBoc-(L)-GlyOH (4) was prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Example 71.

N.M.R. (CD_3OD), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.41 (18H, s), 3.92 (2H, broad s), 4.00–4.60 (5H, m).

(3) Step 3

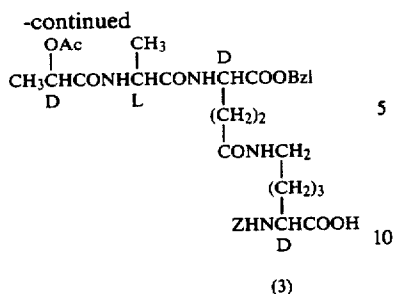
Compound (4) $\longrightarrow$



D-Lac(OH)-D-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH (5) was prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Example 72-1.

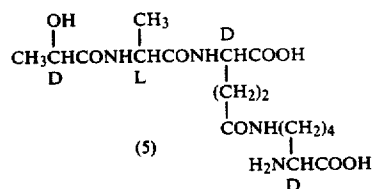
$[\alpha]_D = 11.6$ ($c = 0.25$, water).

N.M.R. (CD_3OD), δ (ppm): 1.36 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.44 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.00–2.60 (10H, m), 3.88 (1H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 3.98 (2H, broad s), 4.10–4.50 (5H, m).



5 Compound (4) →

(3) Step 3

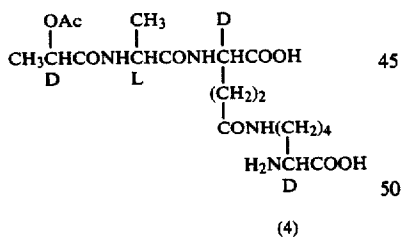


To a mixture of D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-GluOBzl (2) (1.20 g) and N-methylmorpholine (0.28 ml) in methylene chloride (17 ml) was added isobutyl chlorocarbonate (0.33 ml). The resulting mixture was stirred at -15° C. to -10° C. for 30 minutes and then cooled to -40° C. To the resulting mixture was added a mixture of Z-D-LysOH (1)(725 ml) and bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (3 ml) in dimethylformamide (3 ml) and methylene chloride (8 ml) at -40° C. The resulting mixture was stirred at -15° C. to -10° C. for an hour and gradually allowed to warm to ambient temperature. The resulting mixture was concentrated, taken up into ethyl acetate (80 ml) and washed with dil hydrochloric acid, water and brine, in turn. The concentrate was dried over magnesium sulfate and the solvent was distilled off to give an oil which was crystallized from a mixture of chloroform and isopropyl ether to give D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OBzl)-ε-Z-D-LysOH (3)(1.60 g).

NMR (DMSO-d₆), δ(ppm): 1.28 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.37 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.0-2.4 (10H, m), 2.10 (3H, s), 3.1 (2H, m), 4.0 (1H, m), 4.40 (2H, broad t, J=7 Hz), 5.05 (1H, q, J=6.5 Hz), 5.10 (2H, s), 5.20 (2H, s), 7.42 (10H, s), 7.3-8.0 (2H, m), 8.0-8.4 (2H, m).

(2) Step 2

Compound (3) →



A solution of D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OBzl)-ε-Z-D-LysOH (3)(1.50 g) in acetic acid (40 ml) was hydrogenated over 10% palladium black (500 mg) at ambient temperature under an atmospheric pressure of hydrogen. The reaction mixture was filtered and the catalyst was washed with 50% aqueous methanol. The filtrates were combined and evaporated. Acetic acid was removed by co-evaporation with water. The residue was dissolved in water and lyophilized to give D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-ε-D-LysOH (4)(1.00 g).

NMR (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.42 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.47 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 2.16 (3H, s), 1.2-2.5 (10H, m), 3.0-3.4 (2H, m), 3.83 (1H, t, J=6 Hz), 4.1-4.6 (2H, m), 5.07 (1H, q, J=7 Hz).

To a solution of D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-ε-D-LysOH (4)(930 mg) in a mixture of methanol (9 ml) and water (3 ml) was added dropwise 1 N sodium hydroxide (6 ml). The resulting solution was stirred at 5° C. for an hour and at ambient temperature for two hours.

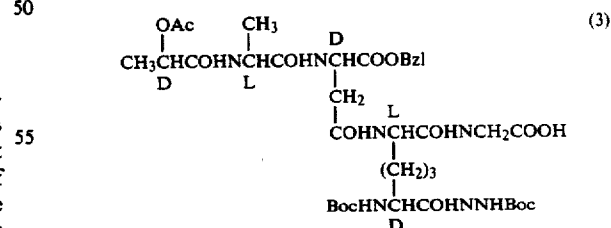
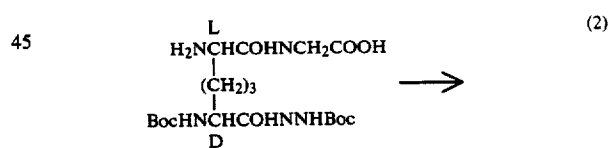
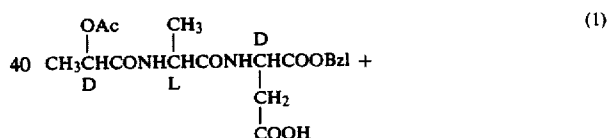
The reaction mixture was neutralized to pH 7 with 1 N hydrochloric acid and concentrated. The concentrate was adjusted to pH 2.2 with 1 N hydrochloric acid and chromatographed on a macroporous non-ionic adsorption resin, HP 20 (90 ml), eluting with water. Fractions containing the object compound (5) were collected, concentrated and lyophilized to give D-Lac(OH)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-ε-D-LysOH (5)(700 mg).

[α]_D = -17.1° C. (C=0.509, water).

NMR (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.36 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.42 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.1-2.6 (10H, m), 3.19 (2H, broad t, J=7 Hz), 3.83 (1H, t, J=6 Hz), 4.1-4.5 (3H, m).

EXAMPLE 88

(1) Step 1



D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Asp(α-OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (3) was prepared from D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-D-Asp(OH)OBzl (1) and Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (2) in substantially the same manner as that of Example 66.

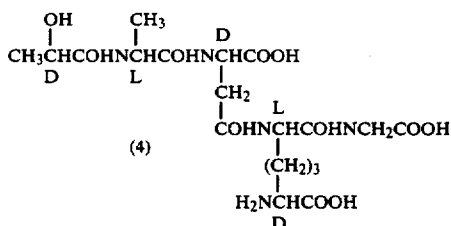
m.p. 120°-123° C. (dec.).

I.R. (Nujol): 3550, 3300, 1730, 1650, 1550 cm⁻¹.

189

NMR (DMSO- d_6), δ (ppm): 1.0–1.9 (30H, m) 2.06 (3H, s), 3.0–5.0 (13H, m), 3.18 (2H, s), 5.14 (2H, s), 6.63 (1H, m), 7.40 (5H, s), 7.9–8.6 (6H, m), 9.56 (1H, s).

(2) Step 2

Compound (3) $\longrightarrow$ 

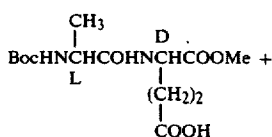
To a suspension of D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala- γ -D-Asp(α -OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (3) (0.74 g) was added 1 N sodium hydroxide (3.0 ml) at 0° C. and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour at the same temperature. The reaction mixture was neutralized to pH 3 with 1 N hydrochloric acid (3.0 ml) and evaporated to give an oil, which was dissolved in water (3 ml) and applied to a column of HP-20 (20 ml). The column was washed with water and eluted with methanol: water (7:3) and the eluate was evaporated to give an oil (0.42 g), which was then dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (5 ml) and stirred for 15 minutes at room temperature. After evaporation of trifluoroacetic acid, the resulting residue was pulverized with ether and filtered to give a powder, which was dissolved in 1 N sulfuric acid (2.5 ml) and sodium periodate (0.09 g) was added at 0° C. After stirring for 10 minutes at the same temperature, the reaction mixture was treated with 0.5 N aqueous sodium hydrogen sulfite (0.2 ml). This solution was neutralized to pH 2 with 1 M sodium carbonate (1.4 ml) and evaporated methanol (3 ml) was added and an undissolved material was filtered off. The filtrate was evaporated to give an oil (0.30 g), which was dissolved in a small amount of water and applied to a column of HP-20 (40 ml). The column was eluted with water and the eluate was evaporated to give an oil (140 mg), which was again applied to a column of HP-20 (60 ml) and eluted with water. The eluate was evaporated and the residue was dissolved in a small amount of water and lyophilized to give D-Lac-L-Ala- γ -D-Asp(α -OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH (4) (120 mg) as a white powder.

I.R. (Nujol): 3270, 1720, 1640, 1520 cm^{-1} .

NMR (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.36 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.38 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.2–2.1 (6H, m), 2.6–3.0 (2H, m), 3.87 (1H, t, $J=6$ Hz), 3.95 (2H, s), 4.1–4.5 (4H, m).

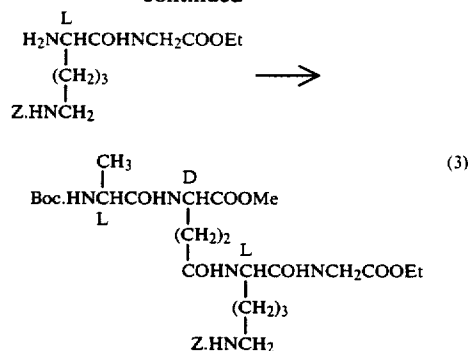
EXAMPLE 89

(1) Step 1



190

-continued



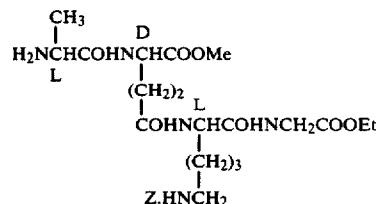
To a mixture of Boc-L-Ala-D-Glu(OH)OMe (1) (1.94 g), L-Lys(ϵ -Z)-GlyOEt (2) (1.67 g) and 1-(4-chlorobenzesulfonyloxy)-6-chlorobenzotriazole (1.72 g) in methylene chloride (100 ml) was added N-methylmorpholine (1.01 g) and the mixture was stirred for 2 days at room temperature. The reaction mixture was washed successively with 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate, water, 5% hydrochloric acid and water and dried over magnesium sulfate. After evaporation of the solvent, the resulting crystalline mass was filtered and washed with ether, to give Boc-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OMe)-L-Lys(ϵ -Z)-GlyOEt (3) (1.34 g).

m.p. 126°–127° C.

I.R. (Nujol): 3550, 3255, 1750, 1720, 1700, 1680, 1660, 1650, 1640 cm^{-1} .

NMR (CD_3OD), δ (ppm): 1.22 (3H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 1.30 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.42 (9H, s), 1.34–1.60 (6H, m), 2.70 (2H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 3.08 (2H, m), 3.68 (3H, s), 3.92 (2H, s), 4.15 (2H, q, $J=7$ Hz), 4.00–4.42 (3H, m), 5.07 (2H, s), 7.34 (5H, s).

(2) Step 2

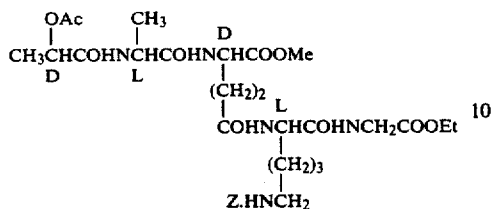
Compound (3) $\longrightarrow$ 

To a solution of Boc-L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OMe)-L-Lys(ϵ -Z)-GlyOEt (3) (1.20 g) in a mixture of ethyl acetate (20 ml) and methanol (5 ml) was added a saturated solution of hydrogen chloride in ethyl acetate (20 ml) at 0° C. and the mixture was stirred for 20 minutes at the same temperature and for 30 minutes at room temperature. The reaction mixture was evaporated to give a powder, which was washed successively with ethyl acetate and ether to give L-Ala- γ -D-Glu(α -OMe)-L-Lys(ϵ -Z)-GlyOEt.HCl (4) (0.97 g).

NMR (D_2O), δ (ppm): 1.25 (3H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 1.62 (3H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 1.34–1.84 (8H, m), 2.44 (2H, t, $J=6$ Hz), 3.17 (2H, t, $J=6$ Hz), 3.82 (3H, s), 4.04 (2H, s), 4.12 (2H, q, $J=7$ Hz), 4.17–4.68 (3H, m), 5.12 (2H, s), 7.42 (5H, s).

191

(3) Step 3

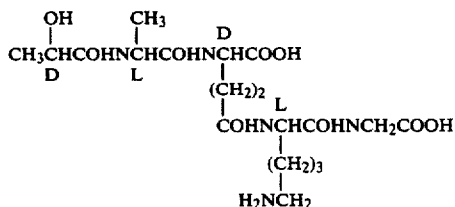
Compound (4) $\longrightarrow$ 

To a mixture of L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OMe)-L-Lys(ε-Z)-GlyOEt.HCl (4)(0.90 g) and triethylamine (0.17 g) in methylene chloride (15 ml) was added a solution of acetyl D-lactyl chloride (0.26 g) in methylene chloride (5 ml) at 5° C. and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour at the same temperature. The reaction mixture was washed successively with 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate, water, 5% hydrochloric acid and water, dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated to give a crystalline mass, which was washed with ethyl acetate to give D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OMe)-L-Lys(ε-Z)-GlyOEt (5)(0.97 g).

I.R. (Nujol): 3400, 1730-1640 (broad) cm^{-1} .

NMR (D_2O), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.17 (3H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 1.45 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.34-1.67 (8H, m), 2.04 (3H, s), 1.96-2.13 (2H, m), 3.07-2.87 (2H, m), 3.64 (3H, s), 4.07 (2H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 4.25 (2H, q, $J=7$ Hz), 3.57-4.34 (3H, m), 5.00 (2H, s), 7.34 (5H, s), 8.25-7.84 (4H, m).

(4) Step 4

Compound (5) $\longrightarrow$ 

To a solution of D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu-L-Lys(ε-Z)-GlyOEt (5)(0.90 g) in methanol (15 ml) was added 1 N sodium hydroxide (30 ml) at 5° C. and the mixture was stirred for 4 hours at the same temperature and overnight at room temperature. Methanol was evaporated and the resulting aqueous layer was adjusted to pH 5.5 with diluted hydrochloric acid and washed with ethyl acetate. The aqueous layer was acidified to pH 1 with diluted hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water saturated with sodium chloride, dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated to give an amorphous solid (0.50 g). This solid was dissolved in MeOH (15 ml) and hydrogenated over 5% palladium-charcoal (0.10 g). After removal of the catalyst by filtration, the filtrate was evaporated and the resulting residue was pulverized with acetone to give D-Lac-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-L-Lys-GlyOH (0.25 g) as a powder.

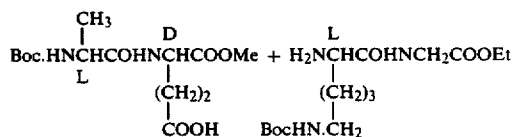
I.R. (Nujol): 3350, 1710, 1670-1640 cm^{-1} .

192

NMR ($\text{D}_2\text{O} + \text{NaHCO}_3$), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.37 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.44 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.34-2.00 (8H, m), 1.84-2.25 (2H, m), 3.04 (2H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 3.79 (2H, s), 4.17-4.50 (3H, m).

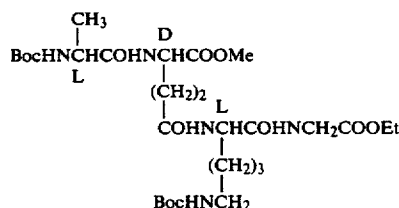
EXAMPLE 90

(1) Step 1



(1)

(2)



(3)

To a mixture of Boc-L-Ala-D-Glu(OH)OMe (1)(1.33 g), L-Lys(ε-Boc)-GlyOEt (2)(2.02 g) and 1-14-chlorobenzenesulfonyloxy-6-chlorobenzotriazole (1.38 g) in methylene chloride (50 ml) was added N-methylmorpholine (0.808 g) at 0° C. and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at the same temperature and for 2 days at room temperature. The reaction mixture was washed successively with 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate, water, 5% hydrochloric acid and water, dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated to give a crystalline mass, which was washed with ether to give Boc-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OMe)-L-Lys(ε-Boc)-GlyOEt

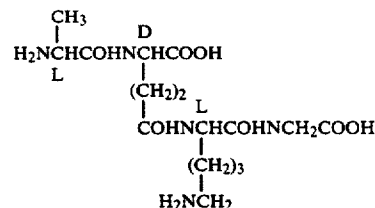
(3)(1.96 g).

m.p. 163°-4° C.

I.R. (Nujol): 3550, 3275, 1740, 1690, 1650 cm^{-1} .

NMR (DMSO-d_6), $\delta(\text{ppm})$: 1.17 (3H, t, $J=7$ Hz), 1.32 (3H, d, $J=7$ Hz), 1.35 (18H, s), 1.42-1.54 (8H, m), 2.08-2.18 (2H, m), 3.25-2.82 (2H, m), 3.62 (3H, s), 3.80 (2H, d, $J=6$ Hz), 4.07 (2H, q, $J=7$ Hz), 3.80-4.07 (3H, m), 6.58-6.77 (2H, m), 7.83-8.25 (3H, m).

(2) Step 2

Compound (3) $\longrightarrow$ 

(4)

To a solution of Boc-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OMe)-L-Lys(ε-Boc)-GlyOEt (3)(0.50 g) in methanol (5 ml) was added 1 N sodium hydroxide (2 ml) at 0° C. and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour at the same temperature and overnight at room temperature. The reaction mix-

193

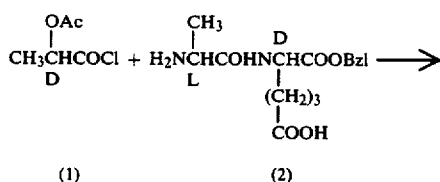
ture was evaporated and the residue was dissolved in water and washed with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was acidified with diluted hydrochloric acid to pH 2 and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated to give an oil (0.37 g). This oil was dissolved in ethyl acetate (10 ml) and a saturated solution of hydrogen chloride in ethyl acetate (5 ml) was added at 0° C. The mixture was stirred for 10 minutes at the same temperature and for 30 minutes at room temperature. The resulting precipitate was filtered and washed with ethyl acetate to give L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-L-Lys-GlyOH (4) (0.17 g) as a powder.

I.R. (Nujol): 3450, 3200, 1730, 1680, 1660–1640 cm⁻¹.

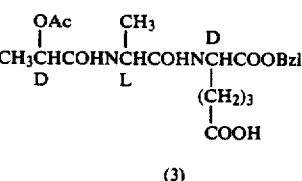
NMR (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.65 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.92–1.42 (8H, m), 2.34 (2H, t, J=6 Hz), 2.64 (2H, t, J=6 Hz), 3.95 (2H, s), 4.10–4.67 (3H, m).

EXAMPLE 91

(1) Step 1



(1)



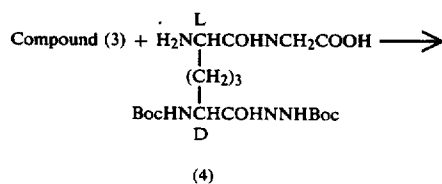
(3)

【D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-D-AspOBzl】 *D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-D-AadOBzl* (3) was prepared from O-acetyl-D-lactyl chloride (1) and 【L-Ala-D-GluOBzl】 *L-Ala-D-AadOBzl* (2) in substantially the same manner as that of Step 1 of Example 1.

I.R. (CHCl₃): 3400, 3300, 1730, 1710, 1665 cm⁻¹.

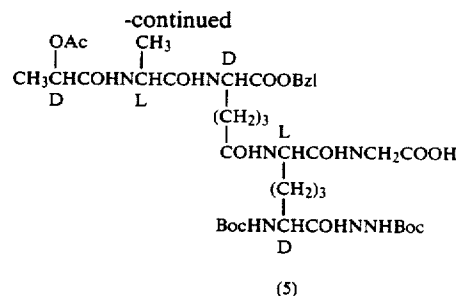
NMR (CDCl₃), δ(ppm): 1.36 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.14 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.4–2.0 (4H, m), 2.08 (3H, s), 2.2–2.4 (2H, m), 4.4–4.7 (2H, m), 4.9–5.2 (1H, m), 5.10 (2H, s), 6.96 (1H, d, J=8 Hz), 7.15 (1H, d, J=8 Hz), 7.20 (5H, s), 7.4–8.2 (1H, broad s).

(2) Step 2



(4)

194



(5)

【D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OBzl)-L-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH】 *D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Aad(α-OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH* (5) was prepared from 【D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-D-AspOBzl】 *D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-D-AadOBzl* (3) and Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (4) in substantially the same manner as that of Example 66.

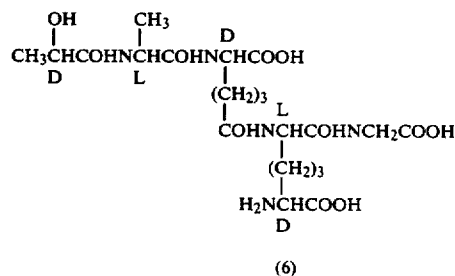
m.p. 108°–110° C.

I.R. (Nujol): 3260, 1725, 1670, 1650, 1630, 1540, 1520 cm⁻¹.

NMR (CDCl₃), δ(ppm): 1.40 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.4–2.0 (13H, m), 1.44 (18H, s), 2.10 (3H, s), 2.1–2.5 (2H, m), 3.90 (2H, s), 3.8–4.2 (1H, m), 4.3–4.6 (3H, m), 4.7–5.1 (1H, m), 5.12 (2H, s), 7.30 (5H, s).

(3) Step 3

Compound (5) →



(6)

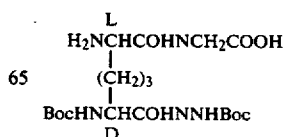
【D-Lac-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH】 *D-Lac-L-Ala-γ-D-Aad(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH* (6) was prepared from 【D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Glu-(α-OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH】 *D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-D-Aad(α-OBzl)-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH* (5) in substantially the same manner as that of Step 2 of Example 88.

I.R. (Nujol): 3270, 1720, 1620, 1530 cm⁻¹.

NMR (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.36 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.43 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.5–2.1 (10H, m), 2.2–2.5 (2H, m), 3.84 (1H, t, J=6 Hz), 3.96 (2H, s), 4.1–4.5 (4H, m).

EXAMPLE 92

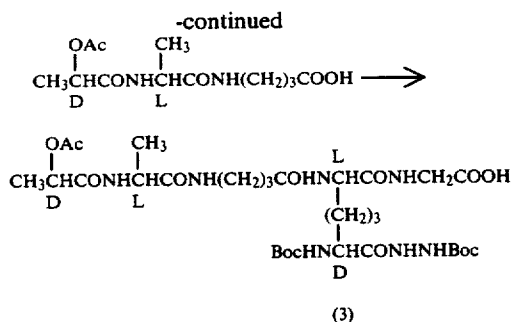
(1) Step 1



60

65

195

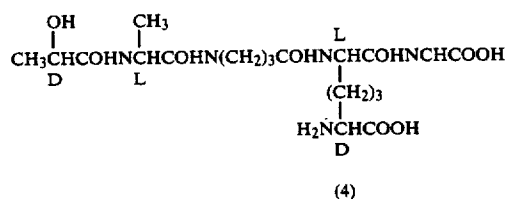


D-Lac(OAc)-L-Ala-γ-Abu-(L)-Boc-(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc-(L)-GlyOH (3) was prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Example 66.

NMR (CDCl₃), δ(ppm): 1.2–2.0 (4H, m), 1.42 (18H, s), 2.0–2.5 (2H, m), 2.15 (3H, s), 3.1–3.4 (2H, m), 3.8–4.1 (2H, m), 4.3–4.7 (1H, m), 4.9–5.2 (1H, m), 5.5–6.0 (2H, m), 7.3–7.6 (2H, m), 7.6–8.1 (2H, m).

(2) Step 2

Compound (3) →



D-Lac(OH)-L-Ala-γ-Abu-(L)-mesoDAP-(L)-GlyOH (4) was prepared in substantially the same manner as that of Example 88.

NMR (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.39 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.40 (3H, d, J=7 Hz), 1.5–2.1 (8H, m), 2.33 (2H, t, J=7 Hz), 3.21 (2H, t, J=7 Hz), 3.79 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 3.95 (2H, s), 4.1–4.5 (4H, m).

The following components were prepared in substantially the same manner as Steps 1 and 2 of Example 1, respectively.

EXAMPLE 93

(1) Step 1

Thienylacetyl-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-Boc(D)-mesoDAP-(D)-NHNHBoc.

NMR (DMSO-d₆), δ(ppm): 1.36 (18H, s), 1.00–2.33 (10H, m), 3.66 (2H, s), 3.83–4.33 (3H, m), 6.87 (2H, m), 7.27 (1H, m), 7.83–8.66 (3H, m), 9.02 (2H, broad s).

(2) Step 2

Thienylacetyl-γ-D-Glu(α-OH)-(L)-mesoDAP.

NMR (D₂O), δ(ppm): 1.20–2.60 (10H, m), 3.78 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 3.86 (2H, s), 4.28 (1H, t, J=7 Hz), 7.04 (2H, m), 7.32 (2H, m).

EXAMPLE 94

For fermentation: (1) A vegetative medium 1 (pH 7.0) was prepared from the following ingredients:

Vegetative medium 1	
Soluble starch	2% by wt.
Gluten meal	1% by wt.

196

-continued

Vegetative medium 1	
Dried yeast	1% by wt.
Corn Steep Liquor	1% by wt.
Tap water	q.s.

100 ml. of the medium 1 in each of ten 500 ml. flasks were sterilised in conventional manner and then inoculated with a loopful of culture from a stock slant of *Streptomyces olivaceogriseus* ATCC 31427. The organism was grown in the medium at 30° C. for 48 hours on a shaker.

Into a 30-liter Jar-fermentor, there were placed 20 liters of the vegetative medium 2 prepared from the following ingredients:

Vegetative medium 2	
Soluble starch	2% by wt.
Cottonseed meal	0.5% by wt.
Gluten meal	0.5% by wt.
Dried yeast	0.5% by wt.
Corn Steep Liquor	0.5% by wt.
tap water	q.s.

The vegetative medium 2 (pH 7.0) was sterilised in a conventional manner and then inoculated a septically with the whole volume of the vegetative inoculum culture prepared above. The organism was grown in the medium 2 at 30° C. for 24 hours.

The whole volume of the vegetative inoculum thus prepared was aseptically inoculated into a 2000-liter fermentor, containing 1600 liters of the fermentation medium prepared from the following ingredients:

Fermentation medium	
Soluble starch	2% by wt.
Cottonseed meal	0.5% by wt.
Wheat germ	0.5% by wt.
Dried yeast	0.25% by wt.
Corn Steep Liquor	0.25% by wt.
KH ₂ PO ₄	0.5% by wt.
Na ₂ HPO ₄ ·12 H ₂ O	0.05% by wt.
CoCl ₂ ·6 H ₂ O	1.25 mg/l
Tap water	q.s.

The organism was cultured in the fermentation medium for 72 hours at 30° C. During the growth period, the broth was stirred with a propeller operating at 170 r.p.m. and sterile air was passed through the broth at a rate of 1600 liters per minute.

After the fermentation was completed, 20 kg "Radiolite" (trade name, a filter aid material sold by Showa Chemical Company, Japan) was added to the culture broth and the mixture was filtered to remove mycelia. 1600 liters of the filtrate was passed through a column of activated charcoal (800 liters) and then was washed with 1600 liters of water. Elution was carried out with 3000 liters of 50% aqueous acetone and then the eluate was concentrated to a volume of about 600 liters.

The concentrate was passed through a column of DEAE-Sephadex (trade name, made of Pharmacia A.B.) (200 liters) which has previously been buffered with phosphate buffer (pH 6.0). The column was successively washed with 200 liters of water and 200 liters of 0.1 M sodium chloride solution and then eluted with 400 liters of 0.3 M sodium chloride solution. The aqueous eluate was passed through a column of an activated

charcoal (200 l), washed with 200 liters of water and then eluted with 400 liters of 50% aqueous acetone. The eluate was concentrated and then freeze-dried to give 800 g of a white powder. The powder was dissolved into 25 liters of water and the solution was passed through a column of CM-Sephadex (H⁺ form) (25 l). The column was eluted with 25 liters of water and the eluate was concentrated and then freeze-dried to give 33 g. of yellowish white powder. The powder was placed on the top of a column of cellulose (1.2 l). The column was washed with 1000 ml. of 70% aqueous propanol and then eluted with 1000 ml. of 60% aqueous propanol. The eluate was concentrated and freeze-dried to give 4 g. of white powder. The powder was dissolved into 150 ml. of water and then the solution was subjected to column chromatography on Sephadex G-15 (2.8 l).

The column was developed and eluted with water. The active fractions were collected and concentrated and then freeze-dried to give 4 g. of a white powder. The powder dissolved into 25 ml. of water and the solution was subjected to column chromatography on CM-Sephadex (H⁺ form) (400 ml). The column was developed and eluted with water. The active fractions were collected, concentrated and then freeze-dried to give 40 mg. of the FR-900156 substance in the form white powders (purity: about 70%).

(2) Fermentation was carried out in the same manner as described in Example 94 (1). After the fermentation was completed, 20 kg. "Radiolite" (trade name, a filter aid material sold by Showa Chemical Company) was added to the culture broth and the mixture was filtered to remove mycelia. 1600 liters of the filtrate was passed through a column of activated charcoal (800 liters) and then was washed with 1600 liters of water. Elution was carried out with 3000 liters of 50% aqueous acetone and then the eluate was concentrated to a volume of about 600 liters. The concentrate was passed through a column of DEAE-Sephadex (trade name, made by Pharmacia A.B.) (200 liters) which has previously been buffered with phosphate buffer (pH 6.0). The column was successively washed with 200 liters of water and 200 liters of 0.1 M sodium chloride solution and then eluted with 400 liters of 0.3 M sodium chloride solution. The aqueous eluate was passed through a column of an activated charcoal (200 liters), washed with 200 liters of water and then eluted with 400 liters of 50% aqueous acetone. The eluate was concentrated and then freeze-dried to give 800 g. of white powder. The powder was dissolved into 25 liters of water and the solution was passed through a column of CM-Sephadex (H⁺ form) (25 liters). The column was eluted with 25 liters of water and the eluate was concentrated and then freeze-dried to give 33 g. of yellowish white powder. The powders were placed on top of a column of cellulose (1.2 liters). The column was washed with 1000 ml. of 70% aqueous propanol and then eluted with 1000 ml. of 60% aqueous propanol. The eluate was concentrated and freeze-dried to give 4 g. of white powder. The powder was dissolved into 300 ml. of water and then passed through a column of DEAE-Sephadex (trade name, made by Pharmacia A.B.) (1.4 liters) which has previously been buffered with phosphate buffer (pH 6.0). The column was washed with 1.5 liters of 0.1 M sodium chloride solution and then eluted with 3 liters of 0.2 M sodium chloride solution. The active fractions were collected and then passed through a column of activated charcoal (300 ml). The column was washed

with water and then eluted with 800 ml. of 50% aqueous acetone. The eluate was concentrated and then freeze-dried to give 700 mg. of white powders. The powders were dissolved into 20 ml. of water and then passed through a column of CM-Sephadex (H⁺ form) (500 ml). The column was eluted with water and the active fractions were collected, and then concentrated to give 10 ml. of concentrate. The concentrate was subjected to a column chromatography on Sephadex G 15 (500 ml) and developed with water. The active fractions were collected and concentrated and then freeze-dried to give 70 mg. of white powders. The powders were dissolved into 25 ml. of water and subjected to preparative thin layer chromatography on cellulose (made by Eastman Kodak Co.): a developing solvent was mixture of butanol, acetic acid and water (4:1:2). Elution was carried out with 50 ml. of water and the eluate was concentrated and then freeze-dried to give 20 mg of the FR-900156 substance in the form of a white powder.

(3) Fermentation was carried out in the same manner as described in Example 94 (1). After the fermentation was completed, 20 kg. "Radiolite" (trade name, a filter aid material sold by Showa Chemical Company) was added to the culture broth and the mixture was filtered to remove mycelia. 1600 liters of the filtrate was passed through a column of activated charcoal (800 liters) and then was washed with 1600 liters of water. Elution was carried out with 3000 liters of 50% aqueous acetone and then the eluate was concentrated to a volume of about 600 liters. The concentrate was passed through a column of DEAE-Sephadex (trade name, made by Pharmacia A.B.) (200 liters) which has previously been buffered with phosphate buffer (pH 6.0). The column was successively washed with 200 liters of water and 200 liters of 0.1 M sodium chloride solution and then eluted with 400 liters of 0.3 M sodium chloride solution. The aqueous eluate was passed through a column of an activated charcoal (200 liters), washed with 200 liters of water and then eluted with 400 liters of 50% aqueous acetone. The eluate was concentrated and then freeze-dried to give 800 g. of white powder. The powder was dissolved into 25 liters of water and the solution was passed through a column of CM-Sephadex (H⁺ form) (25 liters). The column was eluted with 25 liters of water and the eluate was concentrated and then freeze-dried to give 33 g. of yellowish white powder. The powder was placed on top of a column of cellulose (1.2 liters). The column was washed with 1000 ml. of 70% aqueous propanol and then eluted with 1000 ml. of 60% aqueous propanol. The eluate was concentrated and freeze-dried to give 4 g. of white powder. The powder was dissolved into 300 ml. of water and then passed through a column of DEAE-Sephadex (trade name, made by Pharmacia A.B.) (1.4 liters) which has previously been buffered with phosphate buffer (pH 6.0). The column was washed with 1.5 liters of 0.1 M sodium chloride solution and then eluted with 300 liters of 0.2 M sodium chloride solution. The active fractions were collected and then passed through a column of activated charcoal (300 ml). The column was washed with water and then eluted with 800 ml. of 50% aqueous acetone. The eluate was concentrated and then freeze-dried to give 700 mg. of white powders. The powders were dissolved into 20 ml. of water and then passed through a column of CM-Sephadex (H⁺ form) (500 ml). The column was eluted with water and the active fractions were collected, and then concentrated to give

10 ml. of concentrate. The concentrate was freeze-dried to give 400 mg of a powder. The powder was placed on the top of a column of cellulose (500 ml). Elution was carried out with a mixture of n-butanol, acetic acid and water (4:1:2). The active fractions were collected and freeze-dried to give 200 mg of a powder. The powder was dissolved into 7 ml. of water and then placed on Sephadex G 15 (250 ml).

The active fractions were collected, concentrated and then freeze-dried to give 100 mg of the FR-900156 substance in the form of a white powder.

(4) A white powder of FR-900156 substance obtained by the Example 94 (3) was further purified by conducting repeatedly the above purification means to give a more purified product of FR-900156 substance.

(5) 100 ml of a medium containing corn starch 2% (by wt.), gluten meal 1%, dried yeast 1% and corn steep liquor 1% were poured into each of ten 500 ml flasks and sterilised in a conventional manner and then inoculated with a loopful of culture from a stock slant of *Streptomyces violaceus* ATCC 31481.

The organism was grown in the medium at 30° C. for 48 hours on a shaker.

Into a 30-liter Jar-fermentor, there were placed 20-liters of the same medium as above. The medium was sterilised in a conventional manner and then inoculated aseptically with the whole volume of the inoculum culture prepared above. The organism was grown in the medium at 30° C. for 30 hours.

The whole volume of the inoculum thus prepared was aseptically inoculated into a 400-liters fermentor, containing 320 liters of the medium (pH 6.5) containing soluble starch 2% (by wt.), gluten meal 1%, cottonseed meal 1% and sodium sulfate (10 hydrates) 2%.

The organism was cultured in the medium at 30° C. for 72 hours. During the growth period, the broth was stirred with a propeller operating at 170 r.p.m. and sterile air was passed through the broth at a rate of 320 liters per minute. After the fermentation was complete, 4 kg of "Radiolite" was added to the cultured broth and the mixture was filtered to remove mycelia. 300 liters of the filtrate was passed through a column of activated charcoal (150 liters) and then washed with 300 liters of water. Elution was carried out with 600 liters of 50% aqueous acetone and then the eluate was concentrated to a volume of about 120 liters.

The concentrate was passed through a column of DEAE-Sephadex (30 liters) which has previously been buffered with phosphate buffer (pH 6.0). The column was successively washed with 30 liters of water and 30 liters of 0.1 M sodium chloride and then eluted with 0.3 M sodium chloride. The eluate (60 liters) was passed through a column of an activated charcoal (30 liters), washed with 60 liters of water and then eluted with 60 liters of 50% aqueous acetone. The eluate was freeze-dried to give 120 g of a white powder. The powder was dissolved in 4 liters of water and the solution was passed through a column of CM-Sephadex (H+ form) (14 liters). The column was eluted with water and the eluate was concentrated and then freeze-dried to give 20 g of a powder. The powder was placed on the top of the column of cellulose. Elution was carried out with an aqueous propanol and the active fractions were collected and freeze-dried to give 5 g of a powder. The powder was dissolved in 500 ml of water and the solution was passed through a column of DEAE-Sephadex (1.3 liters) which has previously been buffered with phosphate buffer (pH 6). The column was washed with

0.1 M sodium chloride and eluted with 0.2 M sodium chloride. The active fractions were collected and passed through a column of an activated charcoal (900 ml). The column was washed with water and eluted with 50% aqueous acetone (200 ml). The eluate was concentrated and freeze-dried to give 1 g of a powder.

The powder was dissolved in 300 ml of water and the solution was passed through a column of CM-Sephadex (H+ form) (250 ml). The column was developed and eluted with water. The active fractions were collected, concentrated and then freeze-dried to give 800 mg of a powder. The powder was dissolved in 20 ml of water and the solution was mixed with a small amount of cellulose. The mixture was subjected to column chromatograph on cellulose. The column was washed successively with 100 ml of acetone and 300 ml of mixture of n-butanol:acetic acid:water (4:1:1) and then developed and eluted with a mixture of n-butanol:acetic acid:water (4:1:2) (1 liter). The active fractions were collected and freeze-dried to give 30 mg of a powder. The powder was dissolved in 20 ml of water and the solution was passed through a column of Sephadex G 15 (250 ml). The column was developed and eluted with water and the active fractions were collected and then freeze-dried to give 5 mg of FR-900156 substance.

For the pharmaceutical composition:

(1) Preparation for injection

The required quantities of the FR-900156 substance were distributed into vials, each containing 500 mg of the active ingredient. The vials were sealed hermetically to exclude bacteria. Whenever the vial is required for use, 2 ml of sterile distilled water for injection is added to the vial and then the aqueous solution is administered by injection.

(2) Preparation of tablet

A suitable formulation for a tablet consists of the following mixture.

FR-900156 substance	200 mg
Mannitol	400 mg
Starch	50 mg
Magnesium stearate	10 mg

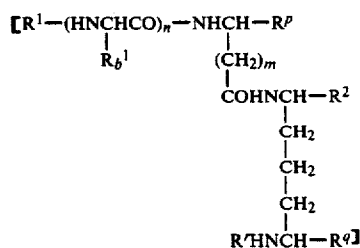
(3) Preparation of capsule

FR-900156 substance	300 mg
Magnesium stearate	15 mg

The above ingredients were mixed and then inserted into a hard gelatin capsule in a conventional manner.

We claim:

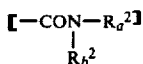
[1. A compound of the formula:]



[wherein
R¹ is acyl;

201

R_b^1 is hydrogen, methyl, isopropyl, hydroxymethyl, protected hydroxymethyl or benzyl;
 R^2 is hydrogen, carboxy, protected carboxy, or a group of the formula:]

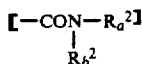


[wherein R_a^2 is mono- or di-carboxy lower alkyl or ar(carboxy)lower alkyl whose aryl moiety may be substituted by hydroxy, R_b^2 is hydrogen or lower alkyl; R^p and R^q are each hydrogen, carboxy, protected carboxy, with proviso that when one of R^2 and R^q is hydrogen, then the other is carboxy or protected carboxy;

R^r is hydrogen or amino protective group;

m is an integer 1 to 3; and

n is 1, provided that when R^1 is hydrogen, t-butoxycarbonyl or N-acetylmuramyl, R_b^1 is methyl, m is an integer 2 and n is an integer 1, then R^2 is hydrogen, protected carboxy or a group of the formula:]

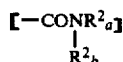


[wherein R_a^2 is mono- or di-carboxy lower alkyl having 1 and 3 to 6, carbon atoms, α -carboxyethyl, ar(carboxy)lower alkyl whose aryl moiety may be substituted by hydroxy and R_b^2 is as defined above, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt.]

[2. A compound according to the claim 1, wherein R^1 is acyl,

R_b^1 is hydrogen, methyl, isopropyl, hydroxymethyl or benzyl,

R^2 is hydrogen, carboxy or a group of the formula:]



[wherein R_a^2 and R_b^2 is as defined in claim 1, R^p and R^q are each hydrogen or carboxy, with proviso that when one of R^2 and R^q is hydrogen, then the other is carboxy, and R^r is hydrogen.]

[3. A compound according to the claim 1, wherein n is an integer 1 and m is an integer 1.]

[4. A compound according to claim 2 wherein n is 1 and m is 1.]

[5. A compound according to the claim 1, wherein n is an integer 1 and m is an integer 2.]

[6. A compound according to claim 2, wherein n is 1 and m is 2.]

[7. A compound according to the claim 1, wherein n is an integer 1 and m is an integer 3.]

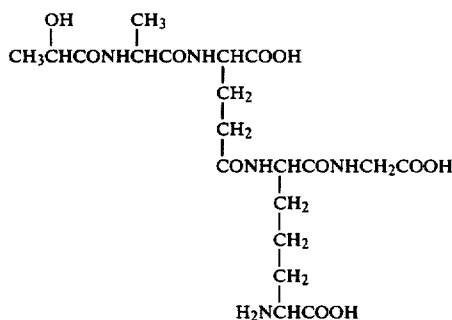
[8. A compound according to claim 2 wherein n is 1 and m is 3.]

[9. A compound according to the claim 1, wherein R^2 is hydrogen or protected carboxy, R^p and R^q are each hydrogen or protected carboxy, with proviso that when one of R^2 and R^q is hydrogen, then the other is protected carboxy.]

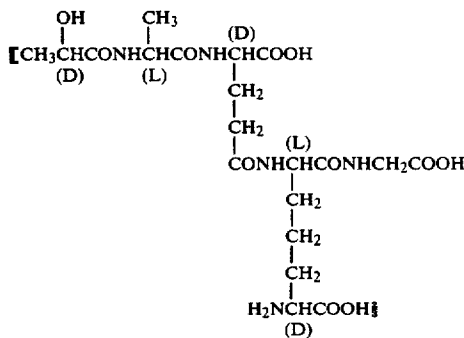
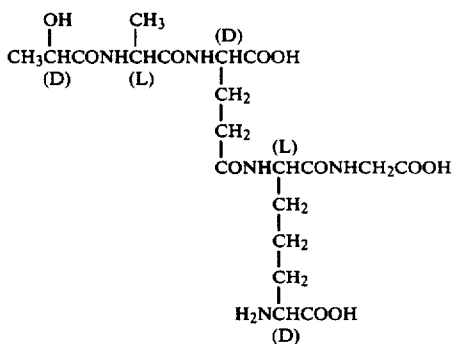
202

[10. A compound according to the claim 1, wherein the protected carboxy for R^2 , R^p and/or R^q is esterified carboxy.]

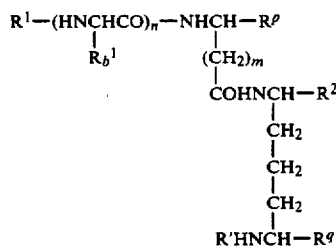
11. A compound of the formula:



12. A compound of the formula:



13. A compound of the formula:



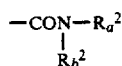
wherein

R^1 is an aliphatic acyl radical which is unsubstituted alkanoyl or alkenoyl or is alkanoyl of at least two carbon atoms or alkenoyl substituted by amino, halogen, hydroxy, lower alkoxy, or lower alkanoylamino;

203

R_b^1 is hydrogen, methyl, isopropyl, hydroxymethyl, protected hydroxymethyl or benzyl;

R^2 is hydrogen, carboxy, protected carboxy, or a group of the formula:



wherein R_a^2 is mono- or di-carboxy lower alkyl or ar(carboxy)lower alkyl whose aryl moiety is unsubstituted or is substituted by hydroxy, R_b^2 is hydrogen or lower alkyl;

R^p is hydrogen, carboxy, or protected carboxy,

R^q is carboxy or protected carboxy;

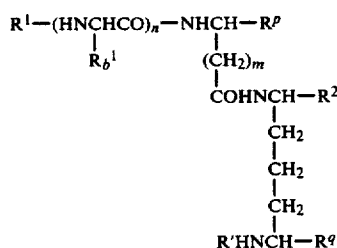
R^r is hydrogen or amino protective group;

m is an integer 1 to 3; and

n is 1,

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt.

14. A compound of the formula:

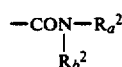


wherein

R^1 is acyl,

R_b^1 is hydrogen, methyl, isopropyl, hydroxymethyl or benzyl,

R^2 is hydrogen, carboxy or a group of the formula:



204

R_a^2 is mono- or di-carboxy lower alkyl or ar(carboxy)-lower alkyl whose aryl moiety is unsubstituted or is substituted by hydroxy, R_b^2 is hydrogen or lower alkyl;

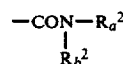
5 R^p is hydrogen or carboxy;

R^q is carboxy;

R^r is hydrogen.

m is an integer 1 to 3; and

n is 1, provided that when R^1 is t-butoxycarbonyl or N-acetylmuramyl, R_b^1 is methyl, m is an integer 2 and n is an integer 1, then R^2 is hydrogen, or a group of the formula:



wherein R_a^2 is mono- or di-carboxy lower alkyl having 1 and 3 to 6 carbon atoms, $\text{---CH}_2\text{---CH}_2\text{---COOH}$, ar(carboxy)lower alkyl whose aryl moiety is unsubstituted or is substituted by hydroxy and R_b^2 is as defined above, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt.

15. A compound according to the claim 13, wherein n is an integer 1 and m is an integer 1.

25 16. A compound according to claim 14 wherein n is 1 and m is 1.

17. A compound according to the claim 13, wherein n is an integer 1 and m is an integer 2.

18. A compound according to claim 14, wherein n is 1 and m is 2.

19. A compound according to the claim 13, wherein n is an integer 1 and m is an integer 3.

20. A compound according to claim 14, wherein n is 1 and m is 3.

35 21. A compound according to the claim 13, wherein R^2 is hydrogen or protected carboxy, R^p is hydrogen or protected carboxy, and R^q is protected carboxy.

22. A compound according to the claim 13, wherein the protected carboxy for at least one of R^2 , R^p and R^q is esterified carboxy.

* * * * *

45

50

55

60

65

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION

PATENT NO. : RE 32,992

DATED : Jul. 18, 1989

INVENTOR(S) : Yoshio Kuroda, et al

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

On the title page:

The Assignee has been misspelled "Fujisawa Pharaceutical Co., Ltd." should be:

--Fujisawa Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd.--

Signed and Sealed this
Third Day of July, 1990

Attest:

HARRY F. MANBECK, JR.

Attesting Officer

Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks